

Installation Guide

Vibe™ 4.0

April 2015

Novell®



Legal Notices

Novell, Inc., makes no representations or warranties with respect to the contents or use of this documentation, and specifically disclaims any express or implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Further, Novell, Inc., reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes to its content, at any time, without obligation to notify any person or entity of such revisions or changes.

Further, Novell, Inc., makes no representations or warranties with respect to any software, and specifically disclaims any express or implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose. Further, Novell, Inc., reserves the right to make changes to any and all parts of Novell software, at any time, without any obligation to notify any person or entity of such changes.

Any products or technical information provided under this Agreement may be subject to U.S. export controls and the trade laws of other countries. You agree to comply with all export control regulations and to obtain any required licenses or classification to export, re-export or import deliverables. You agree not to export or re-export to entities on the current U.S. export exclusion lists or to any embargoed or terrorist countries as specified in the U.S. export laws. You agree to not use deliverables for prohibited nuclear, missile, or chemical biological weaponry end uses. See the [Novell International Trade Services web page \(http://www.novell.com/info/exports/\)](http://www.novell.com/info/exports/) for more information on exporting Novell software. Novell assumes no responsibility for your failure to obtain any necessary export approvals.

Copyright © 2008-2015 Novell, Inc. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, photocopied, stored on a retrieval system, or transmitted without the express written consent of the publisher.

Novell, Inc.
1800 South Novell Place
Provo, UT 84606
U.S.A.
www.novell.com

Online Documentation: To access the latest online documentation for this and other Novell products, see the [Novell Documentation web page \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/).

Novell Trademarks

For Novell trademarks, see the [Novell Trademark and Service Mark list \(http://www.novell.com/company/legal/trademarks/tmlist.html\)](http://www.novell.com/company/legal/trademarks/tmlist.html).

Third-Party Materials

All third-party trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Contents

About This Guide	9
Part I Product Overview	11
1 What Is Novell Vibe?	13
1.1 Vibe Capabilities	13
1.1.1 Content Consumers	13
1.1.2 Content Providers	13
1.1.3 Administrators	14
1.2 Vibe Components	14
1.2.1 Vibe Software	14
1.2.2 Vibe Database	14
1.2.3 Vibe File Repository	15
1.2.4 Lucene Index	15
1.3 Vibe Configurations	15
2 Vibe System Requirements	17
2.1 Vibe Server Requirements	17
2.1.1 Hardware Requirements	17
2.1.2 Operating System Requirements	18
2.1.3 Database Server Requirements	18
2.1.4 Java Developer Kit (JDK) Requirements	19
2.1.5 Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Requirements	19
2.1.6 Directory Service Requirements	19
2.1.7 Disk Space Requirements	20
2.1.8 Other Requirements	20
2.2 Vibe User Requirements	20
2.2.1 Browser Requirements	21
2.2.2 Office Application Requirements	21
2.2.3 Collaboration Client Requirements	21
2.3 Desktop Requirements	22
2.4 Mobile Requirements	22
2.4.1 Mobile App Requirements	22
2.4.2 Mobile Browser Requirements	22
2.5 Supported Environments	23
2.5.1 File Viewer Support	23
2.5.2 IPV6 Support	23
2.5.3 Clustering Support	23
2.5.4 Virtualization Support	23
2.5.5 Single Sign-On Support	24
2.5.6 Linux File System Support	24
2.6 Recommended Hardware Configurations Based on System Performance	24
2.6.1 Configuration Based on Installation Size	25
2.6.2 Test Installation	26
2.6.3 Small Installation	26
2.6.4 Medium Installation	27
2.6.5 Large Installation	28
2.6.6 Very Large Installation	30

3	What's New in Vibe 4.0	33
3.1	Vibe 4.0 User Enhancements	33
3.2	Vibe 4.0 Installation Enhancements	33
3.3	Vibe 4.0 Administration Enhancements	33
Part II	Basic Installation	37
4	Planning a Basic Vibe Installation	39
4.1	What Is a Basic Vibe Installation?	39
4.2	Selecting the Operating Environment for Your Vibe Server	40
4.2.1	Vibe Server Platform	40
4.2.2	Vibe Server Architecture	40
4.2.3	Vibe Server Memory	41
4.2.4	Vibe Installation Locations	42
4.2.5	TrueType Font Location (Linux Only)	43
4.3	Selecting a Java Development Kit	43
4.4	Gathering Network Information for Your Vibe Site	43
4.4.1	Host Identification	44
4.4.2	Port Numbers	44
4.5	Planning the WebDAV Authentication Method	46
4.5.1	Understanding WebDAV	47
4.5.2	Choosing the WebDAV Authentication Method	47
4.6	Planning the Vibe Database	48
4.6.1	Database Type	48
4.6.2	Database Setup Method	49
4.6.3	Database Location	49
4.6.4	Database Credentials	50
4.6.5	Database Encryption Algorithm	50
4.7	Gathering Outbound Email Information	51
4.7.1	Outbound Email Protocol	51
4.7.2	Outbound Email Host	52
4.7.3	Outbound Email Authentication	52
4.7.4	Outbound Email Send Restriction	53
4.7.5	Outbound Email From Address	53
4.8	Enabling Inbound Email	53
4.8.1	Internal Mail Host for Inbound Email	54
4.8.2	Inbound Email Port Number	54
4.8.3	Inbound Email IP Address	54
4.8.4	Inbound Email Security	54
4.9	Adding File Types for HTML Conversions	55
4.10	Planning Site Security	55
4.10.1	Vibe Site Administrator Password	55
4.10.2	Linux User ID for Vibe	56
4.10.3	Administrator Name for Novell Vibe	56
4.11	Gathering Directory Services Information	56
4.12	Accommodating Multiple Languages	57
5	Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site	59
5.1	Linux: Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site	59
5.1.1	Performing Pre-Installation Tasks on Linux	59
5.1.2	Running the Linux Vibe Installation Program	60
5.1.3	Creating the Vibe Database	63
5.1.4	Performing Post-Installation Tasks on Linux	65
5.2	Windows: Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site	69

5.2.1	Performing Pre-Installation Tasks on Windows	69
5.2.2	Running the Windows Vibe Installation Program	70
5.2.3	Creating the Vibe Database.	71
5.2.4	Performing Post-Installation Tasks on Windows	73
6	Adding Users to Your Vibe Site	77
6.1	Accessing Your Basic Vibe Site as the Site Administrator	77
6.2	Creating a User	77
6.3	Adding Vibe Users from Your LDAP Directory	78
7	Updating Your Vibe License	79
8	Setting Up Vibe	81
9	Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet	83
Part III	Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration	89
10	Planning an Advanced Vibe Installation	91
10.1	What Is an Advanced Installation?	91
10.2	Distributing Different Data Types to Different Locations.	92
10.3	Using Advanced Network Information Settings	93
10.3.1	Changing the Vibe Session Timeout	93
10.3.2	Providing a Secure Keystore File	94
10.4	Configuring Requests and Connections Configuration	94
10.5	Configuring Web Services	95
10.6	Changing Your Lucene Index Server Configuration	95
10.6.1	Understanding Indexing.	95
10.6.2	Changing Lucene Configuration Settings	96
10.6.3	Running the Lucene Index Server in Its Own JVM	96
10.6.4	Running the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server	97
10.6.5	Running Multiple Lucene Index Servers	97
10.7	Managing RSS Feeds	97
10.7.1	Configuring RSS Feeds	97
10.7.2	Disabling RSS Feeds.	97
10.8	Configuring Presence.	98
10.9	Configuring Single Sign-On with Novell Access Manager	99
10.10	Configuring Single Sign-On with Internet Information Services for Windows.	99
10.10.1	System Requirements	100
10.10.2	Planning Your IIS Installation and Configuration	101
10.10.3	Configuring the Vibe Server to Support Windows Authentication	102
10.10.4	Running the Vibe Installation Program	108
10.10.5	Configuring Your Browser to Allow Access to the Vibe Site	108
10.10.6	Bypassing Windows Authentication to Configure LDAP and Perform Other Tasks.	109
10.10.7	Logging In to the Vibe Site through Windows Authentication	110
10.10.8	Editing Files through WebDAV with Windows Authentication	110
10.10.9	Configuring IIS to Allow Uploading of Large Files to the Vibe Site	111
10.10.10	Configuring IIS to Load Balance in a Clustered Environment	111
10.11	Configuring Mirrored Folder Resource Drivers.	112
10.11.1	File System Type	112
10.11.2	File System Directory.	113
10.11.3	File System Access	113
10.11.4	Mirrored Folder Setup	114

10.12	Installing the Vibe Software in a Clustered Environment	114
11	Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation	115
12	Setting Configuration Options after Installation	117
13	Advanced Vibe Installation Summary Sheet	119
Part IV	Multi-Server Configurations and Clustering	123
14	Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server	125
14.1	Creating a MySQL Database	125
14.2	Creating a Microsoft SQL Database.	127
14.3	Creating an Oracle Database.	128
15	Installing the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server	131
15.1	Installing the Lucene Software	131
15.2	Updating Your Vibe Site	133
15.3	Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server.	133
15.3.1	Linux: Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server	133
15.3.2	Windows: Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server	134
16	Running Vibe on Multiple Servers	135
16.1	Planning a Multi-Server Vibe Configuration	135
16.1.1	Lucene Index Server Considerations.	135
16.1.2	Vibe File Repository Considerations	135
16.1.3	Configuring Routing for Multicast IP on the Vibe Server	136
16.2	Installing the Vibe Software on Multiple Servers	136
16.3	Configuring a Web Application to Provide High Availability Functionality for Your Vibe Site	139
16.3.1	Configuring Apache as a Load Balancer	139
16.3.2	Configuring Linux Virtual Server as a Load Balancer	141
16.4	Configuring Internet Information Services to Support Multiple Vibe Servers	141
17	Running Multiple Lucene Index Servers	143
17.1	Planning a High Availability Lucene Configuration.	143
17.2	Setting Up a High Availability Lucene Configuration	144
17.2.1	Changing from a Local Lucene Index Server	144
17.2.2	Changing from a Single Remote Lucene Index Server	147
17.2.3	Expanding an Existing High Availability Lucene Configuration	149
17.2.4	Changing Your Lucene Configuration without Vibe Site Down Time	152
17.3	Testing Your Lucene High Availability Configuration	156
17.3.1	Configuring Vibe to Log Lucene Node Activity.	157
17.3.2	Observing Lucene Node Activity	157
17.4	Synchronizing a High Availability Lucene Configuration	158

18 Running Multiple Database Servers	161
Part V Upgrade	163
19 Upgrading From Novell Vibe 3.4 to Novell Vibe 4	165
19.1 Understanding the Upgrade Process	165
19.2 Backing Up Vibe Data	166
19.3 Updating the Java Development Kit (JDK)	166
19.4 Installing the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)	166
19.5 Remote Lucene Index Server Upgrade	166
19.5.1 Creating a New Search Index	166
19.5.2 Upgrading an Existing Search Index	167
19.6 Upgrading the Vibe Software	168
19.7 Upgrading the Vibe Database from 3.4 to 4	170
19.8 Performing Post-Upgrade Tasks	172
19.8.1 Resetting the Search Index	172
19.8.2 Resetting Your Definitions	173
19.8.3 Resetting the Standard Templates	174
19.8.4 Updating the Vibe License	174
19.8.5 Re-Installing the Windows Service	174
19.8.6 Updating the Server.xml File When Using Secure HTTP	175
20 Upgrading From Novell Vibe 3.3 to Novell Vibe 4	177
20.1 Understanding the Upgrade Process	177
20.2 Backing Up Vibe Data	177
20.3 Installing the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)	178
20.4 Remote Lucene Index Server Upgrade	178
20.4.1 Creating a New Search Index	178
20.4.2 Upgrading an Existing Search Index	179
20.5 Upgrading the Vibe Software	180
20.6 Updating the Vibe Database from 3.3 to 4	181
20.7 Performing Post-Upgrade Tasks	183
20.7.1 Resetting the Search Index	184
20.7.2 Resetting Your Definitions	184
20.7.3 Resetting the Standard Templates	185
20.7.4 Updating the Vibe License	186
20.7.5 Re-Installing the Windows Service	186
20.7.6 Updating the Server.xml File When Using Secure HTTP	186
21 Upgrading to Novell Vibe 3.3 from Previous Versions	187
22 Updating the Operating System Where Vibe Is Running	189
Part VI Migrate	191
23 Migrating Existing Novell Vibe 4 Data into a New Vibe 4 System	193
23.1 Using Data Migration in Conjunction with an Upgrade to Vibe 4	194
23.2 Linux Migration with a MySQL Database	194
23.2.1 Preparing the Target Linux Server	194
23.2.2 Preparing the Source Linux Server	195
23.2.3 Transferring Data from the Source Server to the Target Server	195

23.2.4	Importing the Vibe Database to the Target Server	195
23.2.5	Finalizing Your New Vibe 4 Site	196
23.3	Windows Migration with an MS SQL Database	196
23.3.1	Preparing the Target Windows Server	196
23.3.2	Preparing the Source Windows Server	196
23.3.3	Transferring Data from the Source Server to the Target Server	197
23.3.4	Importing the Database to the Target Server	197
23.3.5	Finalizing Your New Vibe 4 Site	198
24	Migrating from SiteScape Forum or Other Collaboration Software	199
Part VII	Appendixes	201
A	Vibe System Requirements Assistance	203
A.1	Java Development Kit (JDK)	203
A.1.1	Oracle JDK on Linux	203
A.1.2	IBM JDK on Linux	204
A.1.3	Oracle JDK on Windows	204
A.2	Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)	205
A.2.1	Oracle JCE on Linux and Windows	205
A.2.2	IBM JCE on Linux	205
A.3	MySQL Database Server	206
A.3.1	MySQL on Linux	206
A.3.2	MySQL on Windows	208
B	Memcached Caching with Novell Vibe	209
B.1	About Memcached	209
B.1.1	Advantages for Using Memcached	209
B.1.2	Hardware Requirements and Configurations	209
B.2	Downloading and Installing Memcached	209
B.3	Configuring Memcached	210
B.4	Configuring Memcached in the Vibe Installation Program	211
B.5	Memcached Logging	211
C	Third-Party Materials	213
C.1	ANTLR 3 License	213
C.2	Colt License Agreement	214
C.3	Dom4j License	214
C.4	iCal4j License	215
C.5	ICU4J license (ICU4J 1.3.1 and later)	215
C.6	JAXEN License	216
C.7	Jung	216
C.8	ASM	217
C.9	Firebug Lite	218
D	Documentation Updates	219

About This Guide

The *Novell Vibe 4 Installation Guide* covers the installation and configuration of Novell Vibe. The guide is divided into the following sections:

- ♦ Part I, “Product Overview,” on page 11
- ♦ Chapter 3, “What’s New in Vibe 4.0,” on page 33
- ♦ Part II, “Basic Installation,” on page 37
- ♦ Part III, “Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration,” on page 89
- ♦ Part IV, “Multi-Server Configurations and Clustering,” on page 123
- ♦ Part V, “Upgrade,” on page 163
- ♦ Part VI, “Migrate,” on page 191
- ♦ Part VII, “Appendixes,” on page 201

Audience

This guide is intended for Novell Vibe administrators.

Feedback

We want to hear your comments and suggestions about this manual and the other documentation included with this product. Please use the *comment on this topic* feature at the bottom of each page of the online documentation.

Documentation Updates

For the most recent version of this manual, visit the [Novell Vibe 4 Documentation website \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4).

Additional Documentation

You can find more information in the Novell Vibe documentation, which is accessible from the [Novell Vibe 4 Documentation website \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4).

To access the *Novell Vibe User Guide* from within Vibe, click the *Settings* icon, then click *Help*.

Product Overview

- ♦ [Chapter 1, “What Is Novell Vibe?,” on page 13](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 2, “Vibe System Requirements,” on page 17](#)

1 What Is Novell Vibe?

Novell Vibe is an enterprise collaboration tool designed to increase individual productivity, team effectiveness, and organizational success by providing the right set of tools to the right people.

- ♦ [Section 1.1, “Vibe Capabilities,” on page 13](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.2, “Vibe Components,” on page 14](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.3, “Vibe Configurations,” on page 15](#)

1.1 Vibe Capabilities

Novell Vibe users fall into three basic groups:

- ♦ [Section 1.1.1, “Content Consumers,” on page 13](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.1.2, “Content Providers,” on page 13](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.1.3, “Administrators,” on page 14](#)

1.1.1 Content Consumers

Content consumers use Novell Vibe to work with important information that pertains to them. Content consumers:

- ♦ Maintain their personal workspaces, including setting up a personal Blog, Calendar, Files, Guestbook, Photo Album, and Tasks folder
- ♦ Participate in team workspaces set up for content providers, in order to better collaborate with colleagues and facilitate their work assignments
- ♦ Search the Vibe site for people, places, and other information that pertains to their personal work assignments
- ♦ Identify subject-matter experts to assist them in their personal work assignments

The typical tasks performed by content consumers are covered in the [Novell Vibe 4.0 User Guide](#).

In many cases, content consumers quickly become content providers.

1.1.2 Content Providers

Content providers use Novell Vibe to create and manage teams, customize the Vibe environment, and import data into the Vibe site for use by other Vibe users. Content providers:

- ♦ Create and manage team workspaces and folders
- ♦ Control user access to their team workspaces
- ♦ Establish unique branding for workspaces and folders to clearly differentiate them from other places on the Vibe site
- ♦ Create landing pages for workspaces that consolidate the most necessary workspace information into a single page

- ♦ Customize data entry forms for gathering information from users
- ♦ Create workflows to automate otherwise time-consuming manual processes

The typical tasks performed by content providers are covered in the [Novell Vibe 4.0 User Guide](#).

1.1.3 Administrators

A Novell Vibe administrator is responsible for installing the Vibe software and setting up the Vibe site. This *Novell Vibe 3.4 Installation Guide* provides instructions for Vibe software installation. After installation, the Vibe site administrator can:

- ♦ Set up user access to the Vibe site
- ♦ Create initial workspaces and populate them with information that is of interest to Vibe users
- ♦ Control user access to workspaces and folders
- ♦ Configure email integration, so that Vibe users can receive notifications of updated information on the Vibe site and post to the Vibe site by using email messages
- ♦ Set up mirrored folders to make large sets of data that are already available on disk more easily available through the Vibe site
- ♦ Set up software extensions (add-ons) that enhance the power and usefulness of the Vibe site
- ♦ Set up remote applications that deliver data from a remote location, such as a remote database, for easy access on your Vibe site
- ♦ Manage users, workspaces, and folders as the Vibe site grows and evolves
- ♦ Perform regular backups to safeguard the data stored in the Vibe site

The typical tasks performed by Vibe site administrators are covered in the [Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide](#).

1.2 Vibe Components

A Novell Vibe site consists of four major components:

- ♦ [Section 1.2.1, “Vibe Software,” on page 14](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.2.2, “Vibe Database,” on page 14](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.2.3, “Vibe File Repository,” on page 15](#)
- ♦ [Section 1.2.4, “Lucene Index,” on page 15](#)

1.2.1 Vibe Software

The Vibe software is a customized version of Apache Tomcat. This software provides the web-based functionality you use as you access the Vibe site through your web browser.

1.2.2 Vibe Database

The Vibe database is used for storing the following information about the Vibe site and its users:

- ♦ Structural information about workspaces, folders, and entries (for example, their location in the workspace tree)

- ♦ Identification information about workspaces, folders, and entries (for example, titles, descriptions, dates of creation/modification, and users associated with creation/modification)
- ♦ User profile information (for example, full name, phone number, and email address)

The Vibe database disk space requirements are relatively modest, because the database is not used for storing files.

1.2.3 Vibe File Repository

The Vibe file repository holds all files that are imported into Vibe, information related to the imported files (such as thumbnails and HTML renderings), and the search engine index.

The Vibe file repository disk space requirements depend on the size of the Vibe site. For a large Vibe site, disk space requirements can be substantial.

1.2.4 Lucene Index

The Lucene Index Server is a high-performance Java search engine. The Lucene index contains pointers to the actual data stored in the Vibe file repository. The index enables the Lucene search engine to perform very fast searches through large quantities of Vibe data.

1.3 Vibe Configurations

You can configure Novell Vibe to run on a single server or multiple servers, depending on the size and needs of your Vibe site.

Configuration	Description
Single Server	By default, the Vibe Installation program installs all Vibe components on the same server.
Remote Database Server	For better performance and scalability, you can install the Vibe database on a remote server.
Remote Lucene Index Server	For better performance and scalability, you can install the Lucene index on a remote server.
Multiple Vibe Servers	By running Novell Vibe on multiple servers, you can achieve high availability, including failover and load balancing, depending on how you configure your servers.
Multiple Remote Lucene Servers	Your Novell Vibe site depends on the Lucene Index Server for full functionality. Running multiple Lucene Index Servers provides high availability, so that if one Lucene Index Server goes down, Vibe users can still access the Vibe site because other Lucene Index Servers are still available.
Multiple Remote Database Servers	Each of the three databases supported by Vibe has its own approach to clustering the database server. Information about clustering database servers is available on the Internet.

For more information about which configuration type will best achieve the needs of your organization, see [Section 2.6, “Recommended Hardware Configurations Based on System Performance,” on page 24.](#)

For more information about how to set up these configurations, see [Part IV, “Multi-Server Configurations and Clustering,” on page 123.](#)

2 Vibe System Requirements

You, as a Novell Vibe site administrator, must ensure that your system meets Vibe system requirements, so that your Vibe site can be set up successfully. After your Vibe site is set up, you must ensure that users' browsers and office applications meet Vibe user requirements, so that users can access the Vibe site successfully.

- ♦ [Section 2.1, "Vibe Server Requirements," on page 17](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.2, "Vibe User Requirements," on page 20](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.3, "Desktop Requirements," on page 22](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4, "Mobile Requirements," on page 22](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.5, "Supported Environments," on page 23](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.6, "Recommended Hardware Configurations Based on System Performance," on page 24](#)

For the latest system requirements details, see the *Novell Vibe 4 Readme* (http://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_readme_novell/data/vibe4_readme_novell.html).

2.1 Vibe Server Requirements

- ♦ [Section 2.1.1, "Hardware Requirements," on page 17](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.2, "Operating System Requirements," on page 18](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.3, "Database Server Requirements," on page 18](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.4, "Java Developer Kit \(JDK\) Requirements," on page 19](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.5, "Java Cryptography Extension \(JCE\) Requirements," on page 19](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.6, "Directory Service Requirements," on page 19](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.7, "Disk Space Requirements," on page 20](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.1.8, "Other Requirements," on page 20](#)

2.1.1 Hardware Requirements

Item	Requirement
Processor	<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ x86-32 or x86-64♦ Minimum 2 GHz♦ Multi-CPU systems preferred
Server Memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ At least 3 GB RAM for an x86-32 processor♦ At least 4 GB RAM for an x86-64 processor
See Section 2.6, "Recommended Hardware Configurations Based on System Performance," on page 24 and Section 4.2.3, "Vibe Server Memory," on page 41 .	

2.1.2 Operating System Requirements

Platform	Requirement
Linux	<ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ Novell Open Enterprise Server 11 or later, plus the latest Support Pack◆ SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 11 or SLES 12, plus the latest Support Pack <p>When using the MySQL database on SLES 12, MySQL is not automatically patched. In this environment, you need to patch MySQL manually.</p> <p>NOTE: On SLES, the X Window System is required by the GUI Vibe installation program. However, it is not required in order to run Vibe after installation, or for text-based installations or silent installations.</p>
Windows	<ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ Windows Server 2008, or Windows Server 2012, plus the latest Service Pack◆ Windows Server 2008R2, or Windows Server 2012R2, plus the latest Service Pack

See [Section 2.5.4, “Virtualization Support,” on page 23](#) for information about support for running Vibe in a virtualized environment.

2.1.3 Database Server Requirements

Platform	Requirement
Linux	<ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ MySQL 5.1 or later server and client <p>NOTE: MySQL is included with SLES, but you need to install and configure it. For more information, see Section A.3, “MySQL Database Server,” on page 206.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ Oracle 11g or Oracle 12c
Windows	<ul style="list-style-type: none">◆ MySQL 5.1 or later server and tools◆ Microsoft SQL Server 2012 or SQL Server 2014, plus the latest Service Pack◆ Microsoft SQL Server 2008R2 or SQL Server 2012R2, plus the latest Service Pack◆ Oracle 11g or Oracle 12c

More information about MySQL is available in [Section A.3, “MySQL Database Server,” on page 206](#).

2.1.4 Java Developer Kit (JDK) Requirements

Platform	Requirement
Linux	<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ IBM JDK (latest version) Java scripting must be enabled for proper Vibe site functionality.♦ Oracle JDK (latest version)
Windows	<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Oracle JDK (latest version)

More information about JDKs is available in “[Java Development Kit \(JDK\)](#)” in [Appendix A, “Vibe System Requirements Assistance,”](#) on page 203.

2.1.5 Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) Requirements

Platform	Requirement
Linux	<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Unrestricted SDK JCE policy files
Windows	<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Unrestricted SDK JCE policy files

More information about JDKs is available in “[Java Cryptography Extension \(JCE\)](#)” in [Appendix A, “Vibe System Requirements Assistance,”](#) on page 203.

2.1.6 Directory Service Requirements

Platform	Requirement
Linux	<p>Novell eDirectory 8.8 or later, plus the latest Support Pack</p> <p>For information about eDirectory, see the Novell eDirectory 8.8 Documentation website (http://www.novell.com/documentation/edir88).</p>
Windows	<p>Microsoft Active Directory, plus the latest Service Pack; or Novell eDirectory 8.8 or later, plus the latest Support Pack</p> <p>For information about Active Directory, see Windows Server 2003 Active Directory (http://www.microsoft.com/windowsserver2003/technologies/directory/activedirectory) or Windows Server 2008 Active Directory (http://www.microsoft.com/windowsserver2008/en/us/active-directory.aspx).</p>

2.1.7 Disk Space Requirements

Item	Requirement
Vibe software	<p>At least 500 MB for a new installation</p> <p>When you update an existing Vibe system, ensure that your server has at least twice the amount of disk space available in the following directory, plus an additional 500 MB:</p> <p>Linux: /var/opt/novell/teaming</p> <p>Windows: c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming</p>
Database server software	<p>At least 500 MB for a new installation</p> <p>When you update an existing Vibe system, ensure that your server has at least twice the amount of disk space available in the following directory, plus an additional 500 MB:</p> <p>Linux: /var/opt/novell/teaming</p> <p>Windows: c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming</p>
Vibe file repository	Depends on the anticipated size of the Vibe site
Database content	<p>Substantially less than the Vibe file repository</p> <p>See Section 4.6, “Planning the Vibe Database,” on page 48 to plan for the disk space needs of your Vibe site.</p>

2.1.8 Other Requirements

Requirement	Additional Information
Tomcat 7.0.55	Tomcat 7.0.55 is included with Vibe on Linux and Windows.
TrueType fonts	<p>If you are installing Vibe in a non-GUI Linux environment, you might need to manually install the TrueType fonts if they are not already installed. TrueType fonts enable Stellent converters to function properly for document conversions. For more information, see “Understanding and Configuring Document Conversions with Oracle Outside-In Technology” in the <i>Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide</i>.</p>

2.2 Vibe User Requirements

- ♦ [Section 2.2.1, “Browser Requirements,”](#) on page 21
- ♦ [Section 2.2.2, “Office Application Requirements,”](#) on page 21
- ♦ [Section 2.2.3, “Collaboration Client Requirements,”](#) on page 21

2.2.1 Browser Requirements

Platform	Requirement
Linux	Mozilla Firefox (latest version); Google Chrome (latest version)
Windows	Microsoft Internet Explorer 9, 10, or 11 (must not have the Google Chrome Frame plug-in installed); Mozilla Firefox (latest version); Google Chrome (latest version)
Mac	Safari (latest version); Mozilla Firefox (latest version); Google Chrome (latest version)

IMPORTANT: When using the Google Chrome browser, the following functionality is not available:

- ♦ The ability to edit documents in place (as described in “[Editing Files](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 User Guide*)
- ♦ The workflow graphical designer

For more information about these issues, see “[Edit-in-Place and Other Applets No Longer Work on Chrome](#)” (https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_readme_novell/data/vibe4_readme_novell.html#b1av62tv) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Readme* (https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe4/vibe4_readme_novell/data/vibe4_readme_novell.html#)

2.2.2 Office Application Requirements

Platform	Requirement
Linux	OpenOffice.org/LibreOffice (latest version)
Windows	Microsoft Office 2010 or later; OpenOffice.org/LibreOffice (latest version)
Mac	Microsoft Office for Mac 2011; OpenOffice.org/LibreOffice (latest version)

OpenOffice and LibreOffice are used synonymously throughout the Novell Vibe documentation. Functionality and issues that apply to OpenOffice also apply to LibreOffice.

2.2.3 Collaboration Client Requirements

Platform	Requirement
Linux	<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ GroupWise 2014 with the latest Support Pack♦ GroupWise 2012 with the latest Support Pack
Windows	<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ GroupWise 2014 with the latest Support Pack♦ GroupWise 2012 with the latest Support Pack

2.3 Desktop Requirements

You can download Windows and Mac desktop applications that allow you to work with Vibe files directly from the file system on your computer. The following operating systems are supported:

Platform	Requirement
Windows	Windows 7 and later
Mac	Mac OSX 10.9 and later

2.4 Mobile Requirements

You can download a native application for your iPhone, iPad, Android, or BlackBerry device. These applications have a more polished user interface and don't require you to sign in each time you access Vibe. However, the mobile app for Vibe does not store information on your device; information can be viewed only when you have an Internet connection.

Other devices can access the Vibe mobile interface by using a mobile browser that meets the requirements listed in [Section 2.4.2, "Mobile Browser Requirements," on page 22](#).

- ♦ [Section 2.4.1, "Mobile App Requirements," on page 22](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.4.2, "Mobile Browser Requirements," on page 22](#)

2.4.1 Mobile App Requirements

Novell Vibe mobile apps are available for the following mobile operating systems:

- ♦ iOS (native application is available for both the iPhone and iPad for a free download in the Apple App Store--for iOS 7 or later)
- ♦ Android (native application is available for a free download in the Google Play App Store--formerly known as the Android Market--for Android 2.3 or later)
- ♦ Windows Phone 8.1
- ♦ Kindle Fire (native application is available for a free download in the Amazon Appstore for Android)
- ♦ BlackBerry Z10 and PlayBook (native application is available for a free download in the BlackBerry World store)

Ensure that your device's browser meets the requirements described in [Section 2.4.2, "Mobile Browser Requirements," on page 22](#).

2.4.2 Mobile Browser Requirements

To access Vibe from a browser on a mobile device, your device's browser must support the following:

- ♦ HTML 4
- ♦ JavaScript

2.5 Supported Environments

- ♦ [Section 2.5.1, “File Viewer Support,” on page 23](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.5.2, “IPV6 Support,” on page 23](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.5.3, “Clustering Support,” on page 23](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.5.4, “Virtualization Support,” on page 23](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.5.5, “Single Sign-On Support,” on page 24](#)
- ♦ [Section 2.5.6, “Linux File System Support,” on page 24](#)

2.5.1 File Viewer Support

In Novell Vibe, file viewing capabilities are provided by Oracle Outside In viewer technology. See [“Oracle Outside In Technology 8.3 Supported Formats” \(http://www.oracle.com/us/026956.pdf\)](http://www.oracle.com/us/026956.pdf) for a list of the supported file formats. See [“Oracle Outside In Technology” \(http://www.oracle.com/technologies/embedded/outside-in.html\)](http://www.oracle.com/technologies/embedded/outside-in.html) for background information about the Oracle viewer technology included in Vibe.

The file viewers also support data indexing by the Lucene Index Server.

2.5.2 IPV6 Support

Novell Vibe supports the IPV6 protocol when it is available on the server. If the protocol is available, Vibe detects it and supports IPV6 by default, along with IPV4.

2.5.3 Clustering Support

You can install Vibe components on multiple servers to provide failover support, as described in [Part IV, “Multi-Server Configurations and Clustering,” on page 123](#).

2.5.4 Virtualization Support

You can install Vibe in virtual environments where a software program enables one physical server to function as if it were two or more physical servers.

Novell tests the Vibe software on both Xen and VMware platforms. Vibe is supported on these platforms, as well as other virtualization platforms, such as Microsoft Hyper-V. If you encounter an issue that cannot be duplicated in a Novell test environment, you may be responsible for following up with the provider of your virtualization software.

For more information about XEN virtualization support, see the [Open Enterprise Server 2 Virtualization Documentation website \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes11/virtualization.html#virtualization\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/oes11/virtualization.html#virtualization) and the [SLES Virtualization Technology Documentation website \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/vmserver\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/vmserver).

For more information about VMware virtualization support, see the [VMWare website \(http://www.vmware.com\)](http://www.vmware.com).

2.5.5 Single Sign-On Support

Novell Access Manager can be used to provide single sign-on capabilities for your Vibe site. For setup instructions, see [Section 10.9, “Configuring Single Sign-On with Novell Access Manager,” on page 99.](#)

2.5.6 Linux File System Support

The following file systems are supported for Vibe running on Linux:

- ♦ ext3 (recommended in most cases)

NOTE: The maximum number of file entries in a Vibe File folder cannot exceed 31,998 when using the ext3 file system.

- ♦ NSS (recommended if you are running OES Linux and need the feature-rich environment of NSS)
- ♦ reiser3

2.6 Recommended Hardware Configurations Based on System Performance

Because of the wide variety of ways you can use Vibe, the recommendations given in this section are only guidelines.

The hardware configuration that you set up for your Novell Vibe site should be based on the following considerations:

- ♦ **Number of active users that the Vibe site must support:** Users who have accounts in the Vibe system but do not log in to the system should not be considered in this number. For example, if there are 1,000 users in the Vibe system but only 300 access the system on a regular basis, the number of active users is 300.
- ♦ **Content the users will add:** The type of content that is shared and stored on your Vibe site. The number of active users in the system is a good indicator of what the hardware configuration of your system should be, but you should also keep in mind that the type of content that is shared and stored on your Vibe site has a significant effect on the amount of disk space and memory that is required.

For example, your users might add the following types of content:

- ♦ Multimedia documents, such as CAD and PowerPoint documents (requires the most system resources)
- ♦ Other documents, such as text documents and photos
- ♦ Vibe entries that do not contain attachments, such as blog entries and discussion entries (requires the least amount of system resources)

For example, if you have a Vibe installation with only 400 active users, but those users often upload and share CAD files, you might want to configure a dedicated SQL server where those files can be stored. In addition, provide a larger CPU, increased memory, and a larger Java heap to more efficiently upload and search for the files.

Server machines can be physical or virtual.

- [Section 2.6.1, “Configuration Based on Installation Size,” on page 25](#)
- [Section 2.6.2, “Test Installation,” on page 26](#)
- [Section 2.6.3, “Small Installation,” on page 26](#)
- [Section 2.6.4, “Medium Installation,” on page 27](#)
- [Section 2.6.5, “Large Installation,” on page 28](#)
- [Section 2.6.6, “Very Large Installation,” on page 30](#)

2.6.1 Configuration Based on Installation Size

The following table shows the recommended hardware configuration based on the size of the Vibe installation. For more detailed information about each type of installation, click the installation size in the column header.

	Test Installation	Small Installation	Medium Installation	Large Installation	Very Large Installation
Single Server Only	X	X			
Remote Database Server			X		
Remote Vibe Desktop Server		X	X		
Remote Vibe Add-In or WebDAV Server					
Remote Lucene Index Server				X	
Remote File Repository				X	X
Multiple Vibe (Tomcat) Servers				X	X
Multiple Remote Lucene Servers					X
Multiple Remote Database Servers				X	X
Multiple Remote Vibe Desktop Servers					X

	Test Installation	Small Installation	Medium Installation	Large Installation	Very Large Installation
Multiple Remote Vibe Add-In Servers					X

2.6.2 Test Installation



Tomcat
Lucene Index
SQL Database
File System
Vibe Desktop

This deployment is suitable for a single-person evaluation or minimal usage by a small group.

Vibe Components	CPU	Memory	Java Heap
1 dedicated Vibe (Tomcat) server with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Lucene ♦ SQL ♦ File System ♦ Vibe Desktop ♦ Vibe Add-In 	3Ghz x86 or x64, single-core or dual-core	4–8 GB	2–6 GB

For more information about installing a basic, single-server Vibe site, see [Part II, “Basic Installation,” on page 37](#).

You can perform a Basic installation to set up a single-server configuration, as described in [Chapter 4, “Planning a Basic Vibe Installation,” on page 39](#) and [Chapter 5, “Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site,” on page 59](#).

2.6.3 Small Installation



Tomcat
Lucene Index
SQL Database
File System



Tomcat
(for Vibe Desktop
if more than 100
active users)

This deployment is suitable for a workgroup, department, or small company. All components are on a single server but are running typical memory allocations. If Vibe Desktop is being used with more than 100 active users, it must be running on one or more separate Vibe (Tomcat) servers.

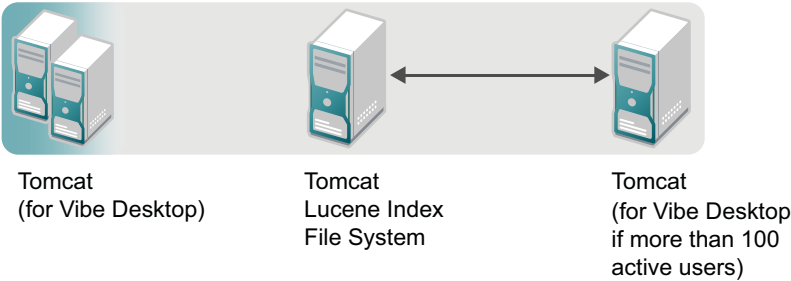
Vibe Components	CPU	Memory	Java Heap
Multiple Vibe servers: <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ 1 dedicated Vibe (Tomcat) server with SQL and file system♦ 1 dedicated Vibe (Tomcat) server with Vibe Desktop for 100 or fewer active users; 2 dedicated Vibe (Tomcat) servers with Vibe Desktop for more than 100 active users	3Ghz x86 or x64, dual-core or quad-core	4–8 GB	2–6 GB

For more information about installing a basic, single-server Vibe site, see [Part II, “Basic Installation,” on page 37](#).

For more information on how to configure Vibe Desktop to run on your Vibe server, as well as how to distribute Vibe Desktop synchronization traffic to a dedicated Vibe server, see “[Configuring Vibe Desktop and the Microsoft Office Add-In](#)” in “[Site Setup](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

You can perform a Basic installation to set up a single-server configuration, as described in [Chapter 4, “Planning a Basic Vibe Installation,” on page 39](#) and [Chapter 5, “Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site,” on page 59](#).

2.6.4 Medium Installation



This deployment is suitable for a medium-to-large business. The database server is separate, to increase the amount of parallel processing in the system. The database can be a single server or a cluster of database servers. More memory is also allocated to the Vibe server. If Vibe Desktop is being used with more than 100 active users, it must be running on multiple separate Vibe (Tomcat) servers.

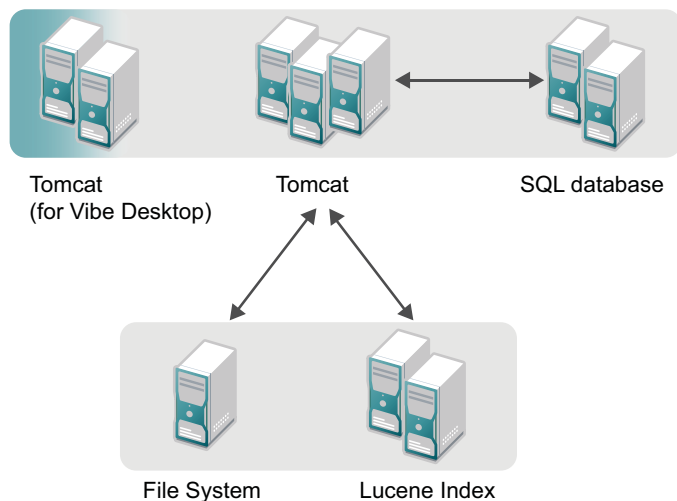
Vibe Components	CPU	Memory	Java Heap
Multiple Vibe servers:	3Ghz x86 or x64 quad-core	4–8 GB	6 GB
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ 1 dedicated Vibe (Tomcat) server with file system ♦ 1 or more dedicated SQL servers ♦ 2 dedicated Lucene servers ♦ 2 or more dedicated Vibe (Tomcat) servers with Vibe Desktop 			

For information on how to create a separate Vibe database, follow the instructions specific to your database type, as described in [Chapter 14, “Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server,” on page 125](#).

For more information on how to configure Vibe Desktop to run on your Vibe server, as well as how to distribute Vibe Desktop synchronization traffic to a dedicated Vibe server, see “[Configuring Vibe Desktop and the Microsoft Office Add-In](#)” in “[Site Setup](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

You can perform a Basic installation to set up a multiple-server configuration (as described in [Chapter 4, “Planning a Basic Vibe Installation,” on page 39](#) and [Chapter 5, “Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site,” on page 59](#)); however, the remote database must be created manually and in advance of performing the installation, as described in [Chapter 14, “Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server,” on page 125](#).

2.6.5 Large Installation



This deployment is suitable for a large business. This deployment uses load balancing across all servers. The database server is separate, to increase the amount of parallel processing in the system. The index server is separate, to allow the application to better utilize the physical memory that is allocated. The file system is separate, and a SAN file system is recommended. The memory utilization of the index server is proportional to the index size, which is directly related to the number and size of documents and entries that are stored. As the number and size of documents and entries

that are stored increases, you should increase the amount of memory accordingly. If Vibe Desktop is being used with more than 100 active users, it must be running on multiple separate Vibe (Tomcat) servers.

Vibe Components	CPU	Memory	Java Heap
Multiple Vibe servers:	3Ghz x64 quad-core or 8-core	4–8 GB	6 GB
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ 3–5 dedicated Vibe (Tomcat) servers ♦ 2 dedicated Lucene servers ♦ 2 dedicated SQL servers ♦ 1 dedicated file system server (SAN is recommended) ♦ 2 or more dedicated Vibe (Tomcat) servers with Vibe Desktop 			

For more information on load balancing, see [Section 16.3, “Configuring a Web Application to Provide High Availability Functionality for Your Vibe Site,” on page 139.](#)

For information on how to create a separate Vibe database, follow the instructions specific to your database type, as described in [Chapter 14, “Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server,” on page 125.](#)

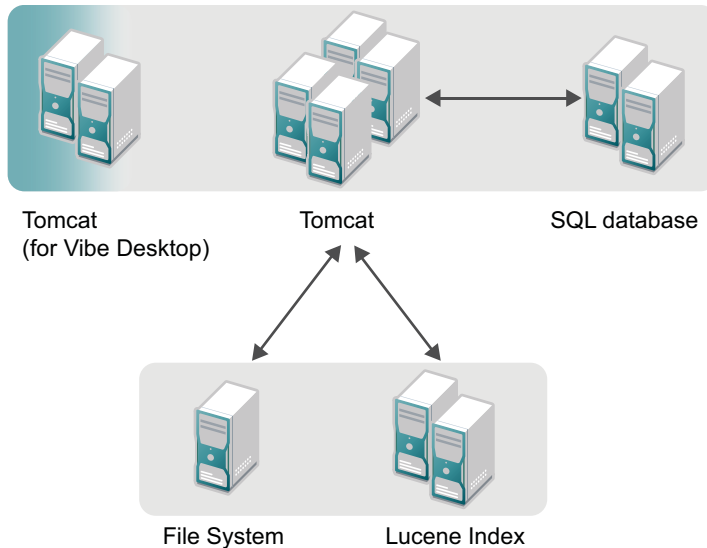
For information on how to create a separate index server, see [Chapter 15, “Installing the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server,” on page 131.](#)

For more information on how to create a separate file system server, see [Section 16.1.2, “Vibe File Repository Considerations,” on page 135.](#)

For more information on how to configure Vibe Desktop to run on your Vibe server, as well as how to distribute Vibe Desktop synchronization traffic to a dedicated Vibe server, see “[Configuring Vibe Desktop and the Microsoft Office Add-In](#)” in “[Site Setup](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

You must perform an Advanced installation to achieve this type of deployment. For more information, see [Part III, “Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration,” on page 89.](#)

2.6.6 Very Large Installation



This deployment is suitable for a large business. This deployment uses load balancing across all servers. The database server is separate, to increase the amount of parallel processing in the system. The index server is separate, to allow the application to better utilize the physical memory that is allocated. The file system is separate, and a SAN file system is recommended. The memory utilization of the index server is proportional to the index size, which is directly related to the number and size of documents and entries that are stored. As the number and size of documents and entries that are stored increases, you should increase the amount of memory accordingly. If Vibe Desktop is being used with more than 100 active users, it must be running on multiple separate Vibe (Tomcat) servers.

Vibe Components	CPU	Memory	Java Heap
Multiple Vibe servers:	3Ghz x64 quad-core or 8-core	4–8 GB	6 GB
<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ 4–8 dedicated Vibe (Tomcat) servers♦ 2 dedicated Lucene servers♦ 2 dedicated SQL servers♦ 1 dedicated file system server (SAN is recommended)♦ 2 or more dedicated Vibe (Tomcat) servers with Vibe Desktop			

For more information on load balancing, see [Section 16.3, “Configuring a Web Application to Provide High Availability Functionality for Your Vibe Site,”](#) on page 139.

For information on how to create a separate Vibe database, follow the instructions specific to your database type, as described in [Chapter 14, “Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server,”](#) on page 125.

For information on how to create a separate index server, see [Chapter 15, “Installing the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server,”](#) on page 131.

For more information on how to create a separate file system server, see [Section 16.1.2, “Vibe File Repository Considerations,” on page 135](#).

For more information on how to configure Vibe Desktop to run on your Vibe server, as well as how to distribute Vibe Desktop synchronization traffic to a dedicated Vibe server, see “[Configuring Vibe Desktop and the Microsoft Office Add-In](#)” in “[Site Setup](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

You must perform an Advanced installation to achieve this type of deployment. For more information, see [Part III, “Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration,” on page 89](#).

3 What's New in Vibe 4.0

This section describes new features and enhancements that have been added to Novell Vibe 4.0.

- ♦ [Section 3.1, “Vibe 4.0 User Enhancements,” on page 33](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.2, “Vibe 4.0 Installation Enhancements,” on page 33](#)
- ♦ [Section 3.3, “Vibe 4.0 Administration Enhancements,” on page 33](#)

3.1 Vibe 4.0 User Enhancements

For a list of Novell Vibe user enhancements and instructions for use, see:

- ♦ [“What's New in Novell Vibe 4.0” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 User Guide*](#)
- ♦ [“What's New in Vibe 4.0” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Advanced User Guide*](#)

3.2 Vibe 4.0 Installation Enhancements

- ♦ **Database Changes:** Vibe now requires you to create the database.

For more information about creating the database on Linux, see [Section 5.1.3, “Creating the Vibe Database,” on page 63](#).

For more information about creating the database on Windows, see [Section 5.2.3, “Creating the Vibe Database,” on page 71](#).

- ♦ **Specify File Types for Document Conversions during Installation:** Previous versions of Vibe allowed you to configure the file formats that could be converted to HTML by editing configuration files. Vibe 4.0 provides a graphical interface during installation for configuring the file formats that can be converted to HTML and viewed from Vibe.

For more information, see [Section 4.9, “Adding File Types for HTML Conversions,” on page 55](#).

For more generic information on document conversions in Vibe, see [“Understanding and Configuring Document Conversions with Oracle Outside-In Technology” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*](#).

- ♦ **Ability to specify a From email address for outbound email:** You can specify an email address to be used as the From address of emails sent from Vibe.

For more information, see [Section 4.7.5, “Outbound Email From Address,” on page 53](#).

3.3 Vibe 4.0 Administration Enhancements

- ♦ **LDAP Synchronization Improvements:** The following improvements were made to LDAP synchronization:

- ♦ Synchronization performance improvements

Performance improvements in Vibe 4.0 as compared with Vibe 3.4:

- ♦ When synchronizing 1 to 10,000 users - 3x improvement

- ♦ When synchronizing 10,000 to 30,000 users - 5x improvement
- ♦ When synchronizing 30,00 to 60,000 users - 10x improvement
- ♦ Improved interface, with a tabbed view
- ♦ LDAP browser for selecting users and containers in your directory for LDAP configuration
- ♦ Support for non-unique group names
- ♦ Ability to preview an LDAP synchronization (display the users and groups that will be added, deleted, or disabled in Vibe) before the LDAP synchronization runs
- ♦ Filter users and groups on Sync Results pages

For more information, see “[Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Sharing:** The following administration improvements were made for sharing:
 - ♦ **Ability to determine whether LDAP groups can be used when sharing:** New option to allow you to control whether groups that were imported from the LDAP directory are displayed in the *Share with* field when users are sharing an item.
 - ♦ **Whitelist or blacklist for sharing:** You can create a whitelist or blacklist for sharing with certain email addresses and domains.
 - ♦ **New sharing option for File Link:** Grant users the ability to share files by distributing a link to the file. Any person with access to the link then has access to the file.

For more information about sharing, see “[Setting Up Sharing](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Ability to Reset the Administrator User ID:** You can reset the user ID for the Vibe administrator.

For more information, see “[Changing the Vibe Administrator User ID or Password](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Improved Method for Resetting Passwords:** It is easier than ever for local and external users to reset their passwords. This method also applies to the Vibe administrator.

For information about how to reset the password for the Vibe administrator, see “[Changing the Vibe Administrator User ID or Password](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **New user interface for granting administrator privileges:** It is now easier to grant administrator rights to users and groups.

For more information, see [Creating Additional Vibe Administrators](#).

- ♦ **Team management administration:** You can more easily view and manage team workspaces across your Vibe site.

For more information, see “[Managing Team Workspaces](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Enhanced user and group management interface:** For information, see “[Managing Users](#)” and “[Managing Groups](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Improved handling of external users:** In Vibe 3.4, marking a user as external was a manual process. External user accounts are now created automatically when a workspace, folder, or entry is shared with someone outside of the organization.

External user accounts from Vibe 3.4 are maintained after upgrading to Vibe 4.

For more information, see “[Setting Up Sharing](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Ability to disable access to the web client:** You can disable users’ ability to access Vibe via a web browser. Users can then access Vibe only through Vibe Desktop or through the Vibe mobile app.

For more information, see “[Disabling User Access to the Vibe Site on the Web](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Support for multiple groups with the same name:** In the Type-to-Find drop-down list, Vibe now includes the group name or group title, as well as secondary information about the group (either the group description or the Fully Qualified DN). This secondary information helps distinguish between multiple groups that have the same name.
- ♦ **Ability to specify a maximum number of REST requests:** You can specify the maximum number of concurrent upload and download requests made by Vibe Desktop and mobile applications.

For more information, see [Section 10.4, “Configuring Requests and Connections Configuration,” on page 94](#).

- ♦ **Centralized Trash Management:** All items that have been sent to the trash are now visible in one location and can be restored or permanently deleted.

For more information, see “[Permanently Deleting Files from the Trash](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Data Quota on Outgoing Mail Messages:** You can set a data quota on outgoing mail messages. The combined size of all attachments in a single outgoing email cannot exceed the quota that you set.

For more information, see “[Enabling/Disabling Outbound Emailing of Folder Digests](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Download Vibe Desktop and Add-In from the Web Client:** You can make the Vibe Desktop and Vibe Add-In available to users from the Vibe web client.

For more information, see “[Configuring the Vibe Desktop Application for All Users](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Exporting and Importing Folders Includes Global Filters:** When you export and import folders out of and into Vibe, all global filters are included in the export and import. (Personal filters are not included.)
- ♦ **Workspace Templates Can Be Created at a Non-Global Level:** You can create workspace templates and make them available to only specific workspaces, rather than making them available at a global level.
- ♦ **Automatically Delete or Archive Audit Trail and Change Log Entries:** You can configure Vibe to automatically delete or archive Audit Trail and Change Log entries after a given number of months. This is helpful if these logs are consuming a lot of disk space.

For more information, see “[Managing Database Logs and File Archives](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Single Sign-On Support with KeyShield:** You can provide single sign-on to your Vibe site with KeyShield (KeyShield license not included).

For information, see “[Configuring Single Sign-On with KeyShield](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

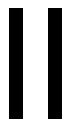
- ♦ **Ability to Deter Brute-Force Attacks with CAPTCHA:** By default, [CAPTCHA \(http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/CAPTCHA\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/CAPTCHA) is now enabled on the Vibe site, securing the Vibe web application against brute-force attacks.

For information about how to customize when CAPTCHA is used on the Vibe site, see “[Securing against Brute-Force Attacks with CAPTCHA](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

For information about how to enable CAPTCHA and set various configuration options, see [Securing against Brute-Force Attacks with CAPTCHA](#).

- ♦ **Ability to Secure User Passwords:** You can require the passwords of local and external users to meet certain password requirements.

For more information, see “[Securing User Passwords](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.



Basic Installation

- ♦ [Chapter 4, “Planning a Basic Vibe Installation,” on page 39](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 5, “Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site,” on page 59](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 6, “Adding Users to Your Vibe Site,” on page 77](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 7, “Updating Your Vibe License,” on page 79](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 8, “Setting Up Vibe,” on page 81](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 9, “Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet,” on page 83](#)

4 Planning a Basic Vibe Installation

The installation program for Novell Vibe helps you install the Vibe software and file repository to the appropriate locations.

- ♦ [Section 4.1, “What Is a Basic Vibe Installation?,” on page 39](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.2, “Selecting the Operating Environment for Your Vibe Server,” on page 40](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.3, “Selecting a Java Development Kit,” on page 43](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.4, “Gathering Network Information for Your Vibe Site,” on page 43](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.5, “Planning the WebDAV Authentication Method,” on page 46](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.6, “Planning the Vibe Database,” on page 48](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.7, “Gathering Outbound Email Information,” on page 51](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.8, “Enabling Inbound Email,” on page 53](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.9, “Adding File Types for HTML Conversions,” on page 55](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.10, “Planning Site Security,” on page 55](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.11, “Gathering Directory Services Information,” on page 56](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.12, “Accommodating Multiple Languages,” on page 57](#)

4.1 What Is a Basic Vibe Installation?

The Novell Vibe installation program provides two installation types: Basic and Advanced. When you perform a Basic installation, the result is a fully functional Vibe site with all required options configured and with typical defaults in use for optional settings.

If you are new to Vibe, the easiest way to get started is to perform a Basic installation first, with all Vibe components installed on the same server. Then you can add advanced configuration options to your Vibe site after the Basic installation has been successfully tested. However, experienced Vibe administrators can choose to perform an Advanced installation immediately, which includes all installation and configuration options, as described in [Part III, “Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration,” on page 89](#).

IMPORTANT: The following Vibe configurations require that you perform an Advanced installation as your initial installation of the Vibe software:

- ♦ Setting up the Vibe file repository so that some types of files are located outside the Vibe file repository root directory. See [Section 10.2, “Distributing Different Data Types to Different Locations,” on page 92](#) for Advanced installation instructions. You cannot move subdirectories within the Vibe file repository after they have been created.
- ♦ Installing the Vibe software on multiple servers to create a clustered environment. See [Chapter 16, “Running Vibe on Multiple Servers,” on page 135](#) for Advanced installation instructions. The option to enable a clustered environment is available only during an Advanced installation.

If you want to implement an Advanced installation option, you should perform a Basic installation first, in a test environment, before performing the Advanced installation to set up your permanent Vibe site.

This section helps you make informed decisions about the required options for a Basic installation:

- ♦ Server platform (Linux or Windows)
- ♦ Server architecture (32-bit or 64-bit)
- ♦ Physical server memory requirements
- ♦ File locations (Vibe software and data)
- ♦ Java Development Kit (JDK) version (Sun or IBM)
- ♦ Database type (MySQL, Microsoft SQL Server, or Oracle)
- ♦ Database creation (during installation or before installation)
- ♦ Database authentication (user name and password)
- ♦ Network information (Vibe server hostname or fully qualified domain name, and ports)
- ♦ Outbound email configuration (SMTP vs. SMTPS, hostname, SMTP port, time zone, authentication)
- ♦ Inbound email configuration (SMTP address, SMTP port, and TLS support)
- ♦ User and group for running the Vibe software (Linux only)

Before performing a Basic installation, ensure that all system requirements are met, as listed in [Chapter 2, “Vibe System Requirements,” on page 17](#).

As you proceed with planning, you can use the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) to record your decisions about the options you want to use.

4.2 Selecting the Operating Environment for Your Vibe Server

- ♦ [Section 4.2.1, “Vibe Server Platform,” on page 40](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.2.2, “Vibe Server Architecture,” on page 40](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.2.3, “Vibe Server Memory,” on page 41](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.2.4, “Vibe Installation Locations,” on page 42](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.2.5, “TrueType Font Location \(Linux Only\),” on page 43](#)

4.2.1 Vibe Server Platform

Novell Vibe can run on the versions of Linux and Windows listed in [Section 2.1, “Vibe Server Requirements,” on page 17](#).

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Vibe Server Platform*, mark your operating system of choice.

4.2.2 Vibe Server Architecture

Vibe can run on 32-bit or 64-bit processors. A 64-bit processor is recommended for a large Vibe site where the processor load is heavy and data storage requires a large amount of disk space.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Processor Architecture*, mark the processor capacity required for the size of Vibe site that you want to set up.

4.2.3 Vibe Server Memory

If a 32-bit processor is sufficient for your Vibe server, the server needs at least 3 GB of memory. If you plan to use a 64-bit processor in your Vibe server, the server needs more.

Vibe server memory usage is significantly affected by some factors and less affected by others:

- ♦ **Number of users logged in:** No significant effect.
- ♦ **Number of concurrent active sessions:** No significant effect.
- ♦ **Database server caches:** Significant memory usage.

When you follow the instructions for a Basic installation, the database is located on the same server as the Vibe software. After you have successfully tested your Basic installation, you can reconfigure Vibe to have its database on a remote server, so that the database uses separate memory resources, as described in [Chapter 14, “Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server,” on page 125](#).

- ♦ **Vibe internal data caches:** Significant memory usage.

When you follow the instructions for a Basic installation, the Vibe internal data caches are subdirectories of the `teamingdata` directory, described in [Section 4.2.4, “Vibe Installation Locations,” on page 42](#). The Vibe internal data caches are separate from any caching or memory usage by the database server itself.

- ♦ **Lucene index cache:** Significant memory usage.

The Lucene Index Server is a high-performance Java search engine. Large file repositories (particularly with large files or a large number of files) can create a very large data index. When you perform a Basic installation, the Lucene index is created on the same server where the Vibe software is installed. After you have successfully tested your Basic installation, you can reconfigure Vibe to have its Lucene index on a remote server, so that it uses separate memory resources, as described in [“Installing the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server” on page 131](#).

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Memory Requirements*, specify the amount of physical memory you plan to have for your Vibe server.

When you perform a Basic installation, the default amount of memory allocated to the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) where the Vibe software runs is 1 GB, which is adequate for a medium-sized Vibe site running on a 32-bit server. This memory allocation, called the Java “heap size,” does not include memory used by your database server or by the Lucene Index Server when these programs are running on the same server as the Vibe software.

A general rule is that no more than 75% of the available physical memory should be allocated to the JVM. Memory not allocated to the JVM must be sufficient to support the operating system, the database server, and the Lucene Index Server if they are also running on the Vibe server, and any other processes running on the Vibe server.

IMPORTANT: A JVM on a 32-bit server should not be configured to take more than 1.5 G of memory. However, large numbers of users and documents often need memory settings higher than 2 GB to provide adequate performance. This type of Vibe system should be set up on 64-bit hardware.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Java JDK Location*, specify the amount of memory to allocate to the JVM where Vibe runs.

Although it is possible to run Vibe with less than 1 GB of memory for the JVM, this applies only to very small test configurations, and is not suitable for production systems. In a test configuration, 512 MB is the minimum amount of memory required to produce a functioning Vibe installation.

4.2.4 Vibe Installation Locations

The default file location for the Vibe software varies by platform:

Linux: /opt/novell/teaming

Windows: c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming

Included under the main Vibe software directory are subdirectories for Tomcat and file viewer software.

The default file location for the Vibe file repository also varies by platform:

Linux: /var/opt/novell/teaming

Windows: c:\Novell\Teaming

IMPORTANT: On Windows, the Vibe installation program displays the Windows pathname with forward slashes (/) rather than the traditional backslashes (\). This syntax is necessary in the installation program.

The Vibe file repository holds all files that are imported into Vibe, information related to the imported files, such as thumbnails and HTML renderings, and the search engine index.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *File Locations*, specify the directories where you want to install the Vibe software and data if you prefer not to use the default locations.

A Basic installation allows you to change the root directory for the Vibe software and the Vibe file repository.

IMPORTANT: If you want to organize the Vibe file repository so that some file types are not under the Vibe file repository root directory, you must perform an Advanced installation as your initial Vibe installation. You cannot move directories out of the Vibe file repository root directory after the initial installation has been performed. To perform an Advanced installation in order to organize the Vibe file repository to meet your needs, complete the planning steps for a Basic installation and complete the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#), then follow the additional instructions in [Section 10.2, "Distributing Different Data Types to Different Locations,"](#) on page 92.

4.2.5 TrueType Font Location (Linux Only)

The Oracle Outside In viewer technology used by Novell Vibe to render various file formats into HTML for viewing requires access to TrueType fonts. Typical locations for these fonts include the following:

```
/usr/X11R6/lib/X11/fonts/truetype
/usr/share/fonts/truetype
```

If the TrueType font location is not correct, thumbnails are not displayed correctly on the Vibe site.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *TrueType Font*, specify the directory that contains the TrueType font location.

4.3 Selecting a Java Development Kit

As listed in [Section 2.1, “Vibe Server Requirements,” on page 17](#), you need to install a Java Development Kit (JDK) before you install Novell Vibe. You can use either the Sun JDK or the IBM JDK for the platform where you are installing Vibe (Linux or Windows).

If you want to use an SSL connection between your Novell Vibe site and a WebDAV server, and if the WebDAV server has a self-signed certificate rather than a certificate provided by a certificate authority, you must use the Sun JDK. The existing Vibe functionality for handling self-signed certificates is not compatible with the way the IBM JDK handles self-signed certificates.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Java Development Kit*, mark the JDK that you want to use with Vibe.

You must install the JDK on the Vibe server before you install the Vibe software. If you are not familiar with installing a JDK, see “[Java Development Kit \(JDK\)](#)” in [Appendix A, “Vibe System Requirements Assistance,” on page 203](#).

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Java Development Kit*, specify the directory where you have installed the JDK.

The Vibe Installation program uses this path as if you had set the JAVA_HOME environment variable. The path is stored for future reference in the `installer.xml` file so that you need to specify the path to the JDK only once.

4.4 Gathering Network Information for Your Vibe Site

When you perform a Basic installation, the Novell Vibe installation program needs hostname and HTTP port information about the server where you are installing Vibe.

- ♦ [Section 4.4.1, “Host Identification,” on page 44](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.4.2, “Port Numbers,” on page 44](#)

4.4.1 Host Identification

When you install Vibe, the Vibe installation program needs to know the name of the server where you are installing the Vibe software. The default is `localhost`. Do not use the default.

For internal use, you can use the DNS hostname of the Vibe server. However, if you want your Vibe site to be accessible from the Internet, you must specify the fully qualified domain name for the Vibe server in order to allow external access.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Network Information*, specify the hostname or fully qualified domain name to use for the Vibe server.

4.4.2 Port Numbers

When you install Vibe, Tomcat is installed along with the Vibe software. Vibe uses Tomcat as a standalone web server for delivering data to Vibe users in their web browsers. For more information about Tomcat, see the [Apache Tomcat website \(http://tomcat.apache.org\)](http://tomcat.apache.org).

IMPORTANT: If the server where you want to install Vibe already has a web server running on it, shut it down while you install and test Vibe. The instructions for a Basic Vibe installation assume that no other web server is running on the Vibe server. If you want to maintain another web server on the Vibe server, you are responsible for resolving any port conflicts that might arise.

On the command line, use the `netstat` command to see what ports are currently in use on the server where you plan to install Vibe:

Linux: `netstat -tan`

Windows: `netstat -a -n -p tcp`

Ensure that the port numbers that you specify during Vibe installation do not conflict with ports that are already in use on the server.

- ♦ [“HTTP/HTTPS Ports” on page 44](#)
- ♦ [“HTTP/HTTPS Ports When You Use Novell Access Manager with Vibe” on page 45](#)
- ♦ [“Shutdown Port” on page 46](#)
- ♦ [“AJP Port” on page 46](#)

HTTP/HTTPS Ports

By default, standard web servers such as Apache and Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) use port 80 for non-secure HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) connections and port 443 for secure HTTPS connections. HTTPS connections use SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) for added security. As a result, web browsers default to port 80 when no port is specified in a non-secure HTTP URL and to port 443 when no port is specified in a secure HTTPS URL.

Tomcat defaults to port 8080 for non-secure HTTP connections and to port 8443 for secure HTTPS connections, so that it does not conflict with the standard web server port numbers. If you configure Vibe with the Tomcat default port numbers, users must include the appropriate port number when providing the Vibe site URL. Typically, users prefer not to do this.

Unfortunately, the situation is not as simple as just configuring Vibe to use the default port numbers of 80 and 443. On Linux, non-`root` processes are not allowed access to port numbers lower than 1024 and you are counseled against running Vibe as `root` in [Section 4.10.2, “Linux User ID for Vibe,” on page 56](#). Also on Linux and Windows, the default Tomcat installation expects ports 8080 and 8443.

For a Basic installation, you can use the default port numbers as presented by the Vibe Installation program:

HTTP port: 80
Secure HTTP port: 443
Listen port: 8080
Secure listen port: 8443

IMPORTANT: If you are installing Vibe on Novell Open Enterprise Server 2, port 80 is already in use by iManager. In order for Vibe to listen on port 80 (which is the standard port), you need to change iManager to listen on a non-standard port, such as 81.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Network Information*, the default port numbers have been provided for you. You need to specify different port numbers only if you anticipate port conflicts with other software on the Vibe server. Resolving port conflicts is beyond the scope of this Vibe documentation.

After you install Vibe on Linux, you need to complete the steps in [“Setting Up Port Forwarding” on page 66](#) so that users are not required to include the port number in the Vibe URL.

If you want to use secure HTTPS connections for your Vibe site, you must obtain signed certificate files as described in [“Preparing for Secure HTTP Connections”](#) in [“Site Security”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide* either before or after you install Vibe.

HTTP/HTTPS Ports When You Use Novell Access Manager with Vibe

If you are fronting Vibe with Novell Access Manager, ensure that you have configured the HTTP/HTTPS ports as described in the following sections, depending on the operating system where Vibe is running.

Configuring Vibe in this way configures Novell Access Manager to access Vibe over port 80, which is the standard port.

- ♦ [“Windows Port Configuration” on page 45](#)
- ♦ [“Linux Port Configuration” on page 46](#)

Windows Port Configuration

Use the following port configuration when Novell Access Manager is fronting your Vibe system on Windows:

HTTP Port: 80
Secure HTTP Port: 443
Listen Port: 80
Secure Listen Port: 443

Linux Port Configuration

Use the following port configuration when Novell Access Manager is fronting your Vibe system on Linux:

HTTP Port: 80

Secure HTTP Port: 443

Listen Port: 8080

Secure Listen Port: 8443

With this suggested configuration on Linux, you also need to set up port forwarding, as described in [“Setting Up Port Forwarding” on page 66](#).

Shutdown Port

By default, Vibe uses 8005 as its shutdown port. For an explanation of the shutdown port, see [Tomcat - Shutdown Port](#) (http://www.wellho.net/mouth/837_Tomcat-Shutdown-port.html).

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Network Information*, specify the port you want Vibe to use as its shutdown port if the default of 8005 is already in use on the Vibe server.

AJP Port

By default, Vibe uses 8009 as its AJP port. For an explanation of the Apache JServ Protocol port, see [The AJP Connector](#) (<http://tomcat.apache.org/tomcat-6.0-doc/config/ajp.html>).

IMPORTANT: If you are installing Vibe on Novell Open Enterprise Server 2, port 8009 is already in use, so you need to select a different port, such as 8010.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Network Information*, specify the port you want Vibe to use as its AJP port if the default of 8009 is already in use on the Vibe server.

4.5 Planning the WebDAV Authentication Method

- ♦ [Section 4.5.1, “Understanding WebDAV,” on page 47](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.5.2, “Choosing the WebDAV Authentication Method,” on page 47](#)

4.5.1 Understanding WebDAV

WebDAV is a standard collaborative editing and file management protocol. Novell Vibe relies on the WebDAV protocol for two key features:

- ♦ Edit-in-Place for using tools such as OpenOffice and Microsoft Office, as described in [“Editing Files”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 User Guide*.
- ♦ Mapping Vibe folders as a web folder on the client computer, which allows access to Vibe files from a WebDAV-compliant file navigation tool such as Windows Explorer or Nautilus, as described in [“Creating a Mapped Drive to the Vibe Folder”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Advanced User Guide*.

IMPORTANT: When Vibe users are running Windows 7 as the client operating system, various issues can be introduced because of WebDAV limitations in Windows 7. If your Vibe users are using the Windows 7 operating system, see [“Configuring Vibe to Support WebDAV on Windows 7”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

4.5.2 Choosing the WebDAV Authentication Method

The WebDAV authentication method determines how user credentials are passed from Vibe to the WebDAV server. Vibe 3 and later supports three types of WebDAV authentication methods:

- ♦ [“Choosing Basic Authentication” on page 47](#)
- ♦ [“Choosing Digest Authentication” on page 47](#)
- ♦ [“Choosing Windows Authentication” on page 48](#)

Choosing Basic Authentication

Basic authentication encodes the user name and password with the Base64 algorithm. The Base64-encoded string is unsafe if transmitted over HTTP, and therefore should be combined with SSL/TLS (HTTPS).

Select this type of authentication when you plan to use Novell Access Manager or Internet Information Services (IIS) to authenticate users.

For more information about encryption algorithms, see [Section 4.6.5, “Database Encryption Algorithm,” on page 50](#).

Choosing Digest Authentication

Digest authentication applies MD5 cryptographic, one-way hashing with usage of nonce values to a password before sending it over the network. This option is more safe than Basic Authentication when used over HTTP.

Select this type of authentication when client users are using Windows 7 as their operating system and Microsoft Office as their text editor.

For more information about encryption algorithms, see [Section 4.6.5, “Database Encryption Algorithm,” on page 50](#).

Choosing Windows Authentication

Windows Authentication provides Windows users with a single sign-on experience, enabling users to automatically authenticate to Vibe after they are logged in to their individual workstations. Internet Information Services (IIS) provides this capability.

To configure Vibe to use Windows Authentication as the WebDAV authentication method, select *basic* in the *WebDAV authentication method* field during the Vibe installation program, then configure Windows Authentication as described in [Section 10.10, “Configuring Single Sign-On with Internet Information Services for Windows,” on page 99](#).

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *WebDAV authentication method*, specify the authentication method you want Vibe to use when authenticating to WebDAV.

4.6 Planning the Vibe Database

Novell Vibe database disk space requirements are relatively modest. Files that are imported into Vibe are saved in the Vibe file repository, as described in [Section 4.2.4, “Vibe Installation Locations,” on page 42](#).

The Vibe database is primarily used for storing the following information:

- ♦ Structural information about workspaces, folders, and entries (for example, their location in the workspace tree)
- ♦ Identification information about workspaces, folders, and entries (for example, titles, descriptions, dates of creation/modification, and users associated with creation/modification)
- ♦ User profile information (for example, full name, phone number, and email address)

You or your database administrator must make the following decisions about the Vibe database:

- ♦ [Section 4.6.1, “Database Type,” on page 48](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.6.2, “Database Setup Method,” on page 49](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.6.3, “Database Location,” on page 49](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.6.4, “Database Credentials,” on page 50](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.6.5, “Database Encryption Algorithm,” on page 50](#)

4.6.1 Database Type

Vibe supports the following database types:

On Linux: MySQL and Oracle

On Windows MySQL, Microsoft SQL, and Oracle

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Database Type*, mark the type of database that you want to use with Vibe.

Ensure that a supported version of the database server, as listed in [Section 2.1, “Vibe Server Requirements,” on page 17](#), is installed and running before you install Vibe.

4.6.2 Database Setup Method

You or your database administrator must manually create the Vibe database. This is a requirement, regardless of which type of database you are using.

- ♦ [“Basic Setup” on page 49](#)
- ♦ [“Remote Server Setup” on page 49](#)

Basic Setup

If you plan to deploy the Vibe database as a basic installation, with the database running on the same server as the Vibe software, you first install the Vibe software, and then create the database, as described in [Chapter 5, “Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site,” on page 59](#).

Remote Server Setup

If you plan to deploy the Vibe database on a remote server, follow the instructions in [Chapter 14, “Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server,” on page 125](#).

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Database Setup Method*, mark whether you are setting up the database as a basic installation (with the database running on the same server as the Vibe software), or whether you are performing a remote server setup, with the database server on a remote server.

4.6.3 Database Location

Creating the database on the same server where you install the Vibe software is the preferable location for your Basic installation. The default database name is `sitescape` (a reference to the company that previously developed the Vibe software).

Database Server	Default Linux Location	Default Windows Location
MySQL	N/A	N/A
Microsoft SQL	N/A	N/A
Oracle	N/A	N/A

You can have your database administrator create a database on a remote server later, after you have successfully tested your Basic installation. See [Chapter 14, “Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server,” on page 125](#).

You must decide before installation whether you want the database on the Vibe server or on a remote server. See [Chapter 14, “Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server,” on page 125](#).

Vibe knows where to find its database from the JDBC (Java Database Connectivity) URL that you provide during installation. For a database that is local to the Vibe software, the default JDBC URL that provides `localhost` as the hostname of the Vibe server is appropriate. If the database is on a remote server, the JDBC URL must provide the hostname of the remote database server.

The JDBC URL also includes the port number on which Vibe can communicate with the database server. The default port number depends on the database server you are using:

Database Server	Default Port Number
MySQL	3306
Microsoft SQL	1433
Oracle	1521

Use this port number unless it is already in use by another process on the database server.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *JDBC URL*, specify the appropriate hostname for the database server (`localhost` or the hostname of a remote server) and the port number it will use to communicate with Vibe.

4.6.4 Database Credentials

When you have the Vibe Installation program create the database for you, it defaults to the following administrator user names for the database server:

Database	Default Administrative User Name
MySQL	<code>root</code> IMPORTANT: The MySQL <code>root</code> user name is not the same as the Linux <code>root</code> user on a Linux server.
Microsoft SQL	(no default) For a Microsoft SQL database, your database administrator establishes the administrator user name and password for the database server.
Oracle	(no default) For an Oracle database, your database administrator establishes the administrator user name and password for the database server.

For an Oracle database and Microsoft SQL database, your database administrator establishes the administrator user name and password for the database server.

Check with your database administrator to see if the default administrator user name is still in use for your database server, and obtain the administrator password for the database server before you run the Vibe Installation program.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Database Credentials*, specify the administrator user name and password for the database server so that Vibe can access its database.

4.6.5 Database Encryption Algorithm

Different encryption algorithms provide differing encryption strength. The supported algorithms for encrypting the Vibe database password are listed below.

- ♦ SHA-256

This is the only available option when you use Basic Authentication for WebDAV authentication, as described in [Section 4.5, “Planning the WebDAV Authentication Method,” on page 46](#).

- ♦ PBEWITHSHA256AND128BITAES-CBC-BC

This is the only available option when you select Digest Authentication for WebDAV authentication, as described in [Section 4.5, “Planning the WebDAV Authentication Method,”](#) on [page 46](#).

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Database Encryption Algorithm*, mark the encryption algorithm you want to use for Vibe passwords.

4.7 Gathering Outbound Email Information

Your Novell Vibe site can be configured to send outbound email through an existing email system. Email from the Vibe site is useful for the following activities:

- ♦ Vibe users can subscribe to email notifications, so that they automatically receive a message whenever content of interest changes. For more information, see “[Subscribing to a Folder or Entry](#)” in “[Getting Informed](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 User Guide*.
- ♦ From the Vibe site, users can send email messages to individual users or to teams. For more information, see “[Sending Email from within Vibe](#)” in “[Connecting With Your Co-Workers](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 User Guide*.
- ♦ If your email client is iCal-enabled, appointments created in a Vibe Calendar folder can be sent to your email client for posting in your email client Calendar. For example, if you are using GroupWise, see “[Accepting or Declining Internet Items](#)” in “[Calendar](#)” in the *GroupWise 8 Windows Client User Guide*.

In order for your Vibe site to communicate with your email system, you need to gather the following information about your email system:

- ♦ [Section 4.7.1, “Outbound Email Protocol,”](#) on [page 51](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.7.2, “Outbound Email Host,”](#) on [page 52](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.7.3, “Outbound Email Authentication,”](#) on [page 52](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.7.4, “Outbound Email Send Restriction,”](#) on [page 53](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.7.5, “Outbound Email From Address,”](#) on [page 53](#)

After installation, outbound email can be disabled and enabled again on the Vibe site, as described in “[Configuring Email Integration](#)” in “[Site Setup](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*. However, you must configure outbound email in the Vibe installation program.

4.7.1 Outbound Email Protocol

Email systems communicate by using SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol). You need to determine whether the email system that you want your Vibe site to communicate with is using SMTP or SMTPS (secure SMTP).

For GroupWise, you can check how the Internet Agent is configured:

- 1 In ConsoleOne, browse to and right-click the Internet Agent object, then click *Properties*.
- 2 Click *GroupWise > Network Address*.

In the *SMTP* field, if the *SSL* column displays *Disabled*, GroupWise is using SMTP. If the *SSL* column displays *Enabled*, GroupWise is using SMTPS.

- 3 Click *Cancel* to close the Network Address page.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Outbound Email Protocol*, mark SMTP or SMTPS to match the email system that you want Vibe to communicate with.

If the email system requires SMTPS, see “[Securing Email Transfer](#)” in “[Site Security](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

4.7.2 Outbound Email Host

In order to send messages to your email system, Vibe needs to know the hostname of your SMTP mail server.

The default SMTP port of 25 is typically appropriate, unless the SMTP mail server requires port 465 or 587 for SMTPS connections.

For GroupWise, this is the hostname of a server where the Internet Agent is running. GroupWise always uses port 25, even when SSL is enabled.

When the Vibe site sends email notifications for scheduled events, the messages are time-stamped according to the time zone you specify here during installation. This setting allows you to use a time zone for email notifications that is different from the time zone where the server is located. The time zone list is grouped first by continent or region, optionally by country or state, and lastly by city. Some common selections for United States time zones include the following:

Time Zone	Continent/City
Pacific Time	America/Los Angeles
Mountain Time	America/Denver
Central Time	America/Chicago
Eastern Time	America/New York

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Outbound Email Host*, specify the name of the mail host, the SMTP port number it uses, and the time zone for the time stamp you want on scheduled event notifications.

4.7.3 Outbound Email Authentication

Many SMTP mail hosts require a valid email address before they establish the SMTP connection. Some email systems can construct a valid email address if you specify only a valid user name; other email systems require that you specify the full email address for successful authentication. You should provide a user name (email address) to ensure a successful connection. Email notifications from the Vibe system are sent using this email address in the *From* field.

Some email systems also require a password. Some do not. If authentication is required, you should also provide a password.

By default, the GroupWise Internet Agent does not require authentication in order to receive inbound messages. However, the `/forceinboundauth` startup switch is available for use in the Internet Agent startup file (`gwia.cfg`), in order to configure the Internet Agent to refuse SMTP connections where a valid email user name and password are not provided. The Internet Agent can accept just the user name or the full email address.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Outbound Email Authentication*, indicate whether or not authentication is required for the Vibe site to communicate with your email system. If it is, specify the user name or email address, and if necessary, the password for the email account.

4.7.4 Outbound Email Send Restriction

By default, the Vibe site allows Vibe users to send messages to all Vibe users by using the All Users group on the Vibe site. On a very large Vibe site, this generates a very large number of email messages. If desired, you can prevent messages from being sent to the All Users group.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Allow Sending Email to All Users*, mark whether you want users to be able to send messages to the All Users group.

4.7.5 Outbound Email From Address

You can specify an email address to be used as the From address of emails sent from Vibe.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *From email address override*, specify the email address to be used as the From address for emails sent from Vibe.

Under *Use this from email address for all outbound email*, mark whether you want this address to be used for all outbound email.

4.8 Enabling Inbound Email

You can configure your Novell Vibe site so that users can post comments by emailing them to the folder where they want to post the comment. In order to receive email postings, folders must be properly configured, as described in [“Enabling Folders to Receive Entries through Email”](#) in [“Managing Folders”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Advanced User Guide*. Also, users must know the email address of the folder where they want to post their comment.

- ♦ [Section 4.8.1, “Internal Mail Host for Inbound Email,” on page 54](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.8.2, “Inbound Email Port Number,” on page 54](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.8.3, “Inbound Email IP Address,” on page 54](#)
- ♦ [Section 4.8.4, “Inbound Email Security,” on page 54](#)

After installation, inbound email can be disabled and enabled again on the Vibe site, as described in [“Disabling/Enabling Inbound Email Postings”](#) in [“Site Setup”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*. However, you must configure inbound email in the Vibe installation program.

4.8.1 Internal Mail Host for Inbound Email

Inbound email is disabled by default. When you enable it, the Vibe site starts an internal SMTP mail host to receive incoming messages and post them to the folders associated with the email addresses to which the messages are addressed. By default, the internal SMTP mail host uses port 2525, so that it does not conflict with another mail host that might be running on the Vibe server.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Inbound Email Configuration*, mark whether you want users to be able to post to the Vibe site from their email clients.

4.8.2 Inbound Email Port Number

Selecting the port number for the Vibe internal SMTP mail host presents the same issue that needs to be dealt with for the HTTP port numbers, as described in [“HTTP/HTTPS Ports” on page 44](#). You might want to configure the Vibe internal SMTP mail host to use the standard SMTP port of 25. How you handle the issue depends on whether you are installing on Linux or on Windows.

Linux: Keep the default port number (2525) in the Vibe Installation program, then complete the steps in [“Setting Up Port Forwarding” on page 66](#) so that requests incoming on port 25 are forwarded to port 2525.

Windows: Specify port 25 for incoming email in the Vibe Installation program.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Inbound Email Configuration*, specify the port number for the Vibe internal SMTP host to listen on.

4.8.3 Inbound Email IP Address

If you want to install Vibe on a server where an SMTP mail host is already running, you can do so if the server has multiple IP addresses. The existing SMTP mail host can use port 25 on one IP address and Vibe can use port 25 on another IP address. During installation, you need to specify an IP address only if the server has multiple IP addresses and you want Vibe to bind to a specific IP address rather than all of them.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Inbound Email Configuration*, specify the IP address for the Vibe internal SMTP host to listen on, if you are installing Vibe on a server with multiple IP addresses and you want Vibe to bind to just one of them.

4.8.4 Inbound Email Security

You can choose whether the Vibe internal mail host uses TLS (Transport Layer Security) when it communicates with other SMTP mail hosts. In order for TLS to function properly, you must have a certificate on the Vibe server, as described in [“Securing Email Transfer”](#) in [“Site Security”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*. When an SMTP mail host queries the Vibe mail host, the Vibe

mail host communicates its ability or inability to handle TLS. The other SMTP mail host then communicates appropriately, taking into account how the Vibe internal mail host is configured. The default is to use TLS, because this provides more secure communication between mail hosts.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Inbound Email Configuration*, mark whether you want the Vibe server to announce that it can use TLS.

You can install Vibe with *Announce TLS* selected, and then set up the certificate afterwards. However, if you select *Announce TLS*, inbound email does not work until the certificate is available on the Vibe server.

4.9 Adding File Types for HTML Conversions

Many file formats in Novell Vibe can be viewed as HTML by default, as described in “[Viewing the File in HTML Format](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 User Guide*. File formats that can be viewed as HTML by default are: .123, .bmp, .db, .doc, .docx, .dotm, .drw, .dxf, .htm, .html, .lwp, .odf, .odf, .odp, .ods, .odt, .pct, .ppt, .pptx, .prz, .qpw, .rtf, .sdw, .shw, .sxw, .tif, .txt, .vsd, .wpd, .xls, .xlsx, .sxi

Some file formats, such as .pdf files, cannot be viewed as HTML by default. This is because the quality of these files is lessened when viewed as HTML. However, if you choose, you can enable non-default file formats, such as .pdf files, to be viewed as HTML.

Not all file formats can be enabled to be viewed as HTML in Vibe, but many can be. If you are unsure whether Vibe supports a particular file format to be viewed as HTML, try it and see.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Vibe File Types for HTML Conversions*, specify the file types (in addition to the default file types) that you want users to be able to view as HTML.

4.10 Planning Site Security

- ♦ [Section 4.10.1, “Vibe Site Administrator Password,”](#) on page 55
- ♦ [Section 4.10.2, “Linux User ID for Vibe,”](#) on page 56
- ♦ [Section 4.10.3, “Administrator Name for Novell Vibe,”](#) on page 56

4.10.1 Vibe Site Administrator Password

When you first log in to the Novell Vibe site, you use `admin` as the Vibe administrator user name and `admin` as the password. You should immediately change the password to one of your own choosing when you are prompted to do so. If you do not immediately change the password, you can change the Vibe administrator user name and password at any time, as described in “[Changing the Vibe Administrator User ID or Password](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Vibe Administrator Credentials*, specify the password that you want to use whenever you log in as the Vibe site administrator.

4.10.2 Linux User ID for Vibe

For optimum security, Vibe should not run as the Linux `root` user. For example, if an intruder manages to assume the identity of the Vibe program, the intruder gains all the privileges of the commandeered process. If the process is running with `root` user privileges, the intruder has `root` access to your system. If the process is running as a user with minimal privileges, the intruder has only restricted access to your system. Therefore, your system is more secure if the Vibe program does not run as `root`. For example, you might want to create a user named `vibeadmin` for the Vibe program to run as. Linux users require a full name and a password.

In addition to creating a Linux user for the Vibe program to run as, you can also create a Linux group for that user to belong to. This enables the Vibe program to create directories and files with consistent ownership and permissions. For example, you might want to create a group named `vibeadmin` for the `vibeadmin` user to belong to. Groups do not require passwords.

As an alternative to creating a custom Linux user name and group for Vibe, you can use the existing `wwwrun` user name and the `www` group. This account is typically used to start web server processes.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Linux User Name and Group*, specify the non-`root` Linux user name and group name to use for running the Vibe program. If you are creating a new Linux user, specify its full name and password.

IMPORTANT: The non-`root` Linux user name and group must exist before you start the Vibe Installation program. Instructions for creating the user name and group are provided in [Section 5.1.1, “Performing Pre-Installation Tasks on Linux,” on page 59](#).

4.10.3 Administrator Name for Novell Vibe

This is the administrator user ID that is used when logging in to the Vibe system. For enhanced security, you might want to change the user ID.

In the *Default Administrator Name* field, specify a new user ID for the vibe administrator.

4.11 Gathering Directory Services Information

Unless you are planning a very small Novell Vibe site, the most efficient way to create Vibe users is to synchronize initial user information from your network directory service (Novell eDirectory, Microsoft Active Directory, or other LDAP directory service) after you have installed the Vibe software. Over time, you can continue to synchronize user information from the LDAP directory to your Vibe site.

“[Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide* provides instructions for synchronizing user information via LDAP. Use this section when planning your LDAP configuration.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET


Under the *LDAP* sections, mark the information specific for your environment.

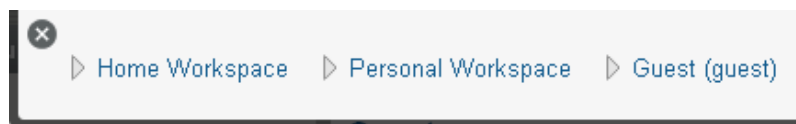
4.12 Accommodating Multiple Languages

The Novell Vibe installation program runs in English only. When you install the Vibe software, you can choose to have the primary language of the Vibe site be any of the following languages:

- ♦ Chinese-Simplified
- ♦ Chinese Traditional
- ♦ Danish
- ♦ Dutch
- ♦ English
- ♦ French
- ♦ German
- ♦ Hungarian
- ♦ Italian
- ♦ Japanese
- ♦ Polish
- ♦ Portuguese
- ♦ Russian
- ♦ Spanish
- ♦ Swedish

Some languages have an additional distinction by locale (the country where the language is spoken).

The language you select during installation establishes the language of the global text that displays in locations where all Vibe users see it, such as in the Workspace tree when you click the Workspace tree icon :



The language you select also establishes the default interface language and locale for creating new workspaces.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Default Locale*, mark the default language and specify the default country for your Vibe site.

Additional language customization can be done after installation, as described in “[Managing a Multiple-Language Vibe Site](#)” in “[Site Setup](#)” in the [Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide](#).

5 Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site

Follow the setup instructions for the platform where you are installing Novell Vibe:

- ♦ [Section 5.1, “Linux: Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site,” on page 59](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.2, “Windows: Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site,” on page 69](#)

5.1 Linux: Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site

You should already have reviewed [Chapter 4, “Planning a Basic Vibe Installation,” on page 39](#) and filled out the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#). The following sections step you through the process of installing and starting Novell Vibe on Linux:

- ♦ [Section 5.1.1, “Performing Pre-Installation Tasks on Linux,” on page 59](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.1.2, “Running the Linux Vibe Installation Program,” on page 60](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.1.3, “Creating the Vibe Database,” on page 63](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.1.4, “Performing Post-Installation Tasks on Linux,” on page 65](#)

5.1.1 Performing Pre-Installation Tasks on Linux

- 1 Ensure that the Linux server where you plan to install Vibe meets the system requirements listed in [Section 2.1, “Vibe Server Requirements,” on page 17](#).
- 2 In a terminal window, become `root` by entering `su -` and the `root` password.
- 3 Set the Linux open file limit to meet the needs of the Vibe software:
 - 3a Open the `/etc/security/limits.conf` file in an ASCII text editor.
 - 3b Add the following lines to the bottom of the list, following the format of the example lines:

```
*      hard      nofile      65535
*      soft      nofile      4096
```
 - 3c Save the file, then exit the text editor.
- 4 Perform the following conditional tasks if necessary:
 - ♦ [“Stopping and Disabling an Existing Web Server” on page 59](#)
 - ♦ [“Creating a Vibe User and Group” on page 60](#)

Stopping and Disabling an Existing Web Server

If a web server is currently running on the Vibe server, stop it, and preferably disable it.

For example, to stop the Apache web server and its associated instance of Tomcat:

- 1 Enter the following commands to stop Apache and Tomcat:

```
/etc/init.d/tomcat5 stop
/etc/init.d/apache2 stop
```

- 2 Enter the following commands to ensure that Apache and Tomcat do not start again when you reboot the server:

```
chkconfig --del apache2
chkconfig --del tomcat5
```

Creating a Vibe User and Group

If the user and group that you want to use for Vibe (as described in [Section 4.10.2, “Linux User ID for Vibe,”](#) on page 56) do not exist yet, create them. It is easier if you create the group first.

- 1 Create the Linux group that you want to own the Vibe software and data store directories:
 - 1a In YaST, click *Security and Users > User and Group Management* to display the User and Group Administration page.
 - 1b Click *Groups*, then click *Add*.
 - 1c Specify the group name, then click *Accept* or *OK*.
The group does not need a password.
- 2 Create the Linux user that you want Vibe to run as:
 - 2a Click *Users*, then click *Add*.
 - 2b On the *User Data* tab, specify the user's full name, user name, and password, then select *Disable User Login*.
Like any Linux system user, the Vibe Linux user does not need to manually log in. The Vibe Linux user does not need a password, either, but YaST requires you to provide one.
 - 2c Click the *Details* tab.
 - 2d In the *Login Shell* drop-down list, select */bin/false*, because this user does not need to manually log in.
 - 2e In the *Default Group* drop-down list, select the Linux group that you created in [Step 1](#).
 - 2f In the *Groups* list, select the Linux group that you created in [Step 1](#).
 - 2g Click *Accept* or *OK*.
- 3 Exit YaST.

5.1.2 Running the Linux Vibe Installation Program

When you run the Vibe installation program for the first time, you typically want to use the GUI interface. However, if you are installing Vibe on a server where the X Window System is not available, a text-based installation program is also available. After you are familiar with the Vibe installation process, you can use a silent installation to automate the process.

- ♦ [“Using the GUI Installation Program”](#) on page 60
- ♦ [“Using the Text-Based Installation Program”](#) on page 62
- ♦ [“Performing a Silent Installation”](#) on page 63

Using the GUI Installation Program

- 1 In a terminal window, enter `su -` to become the `root` user, then enter the `root` password.
You need `root` permissions in order to install the Vibe software, but you should not run the Vibe software as `root`.
- 2 Change to the directory where you downloaded and extracted the Vibe software.

- 3 Ensure that you have a `license-key.xml` file in the same directory with the Vibe installation program.

```
more license-key.xml
```

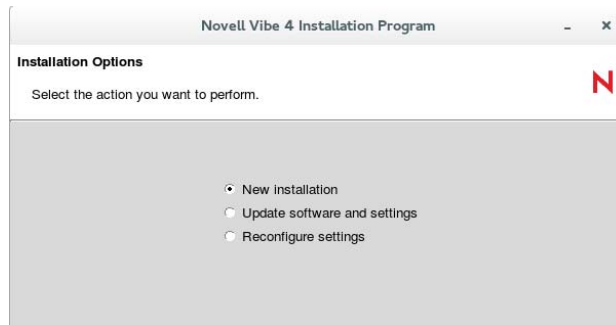
The Vibe installation program does not start without a license file in the same directory. If you have not already, rename the license file to be called `license-key.xml`.

For more information about licensing, see [Chapter 7, “Updating Your Vibe License,” on page 79](#).

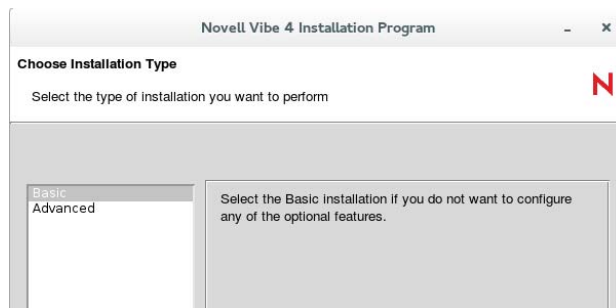
- 4 Enter the following command to start the Vibe installation program:

```
./installer-teaming.linux
```

- 5 Accept the License Agreement, then click *Next*.



- 6 Click *Next* to accept the default of *New installation*.



- 7 Click *Next* to accept the default of *Basic*.
- 8 Use the information that you have gathered on the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) to provide the information that the Vibe installation program prompts you for:

[Installation Locations](#)

[Location of TrueType Fonts for Stellant Converters](#)

[Additional Extensions for View as HTML](#)

[Default Locale for Novell Vibe](#)

[User ID for Novell Vibe](#)

[Built-In Administrator Name for Novell Vibe](#)

[Network Information](#)

[WebDAV Authentication Method](#)

[Database Selection](#)

[Database Type](#)

[JDBC URL](#)

[Credentials](#)

- Setup
 - Encryption Algorithm
- Java JDK Location
- Outbound Email Configuration
 - Protocol
 - Host, Port, and Time Zone
 - User Name, Password, and Authentication
 - Allow Sending Email to All Users
- Inbound Email Configuration

The installation program stores the information that it gathers in the `installer.xml` file in the same directory where you started the installation program.

- 9 After you have provided all the requested information, click *Install* to begin the Vibe installation.
- 10 When the installation is complete, click *Finish* to exit the Vibe installation program.

Information about the installation process is written to the `installer.log` file in the same directory where you ran the Installation program. If a problem arises during the installation, the `installer.log` file provides information that can help you resolve the problem.
- 11 Continue with [Section 5.1.3, “Creating the Vibe Database,” on page 63](#).

Using the Text-Based Installation Program

If you try to start the GUI Vibe installation program in an environment where the X Windows System is not running, the text-based Vibe Installation program starts.

```
Checking license key...

License Summary

Product:   Novell Vibe
Version:   3.0
UID:       1
Effective: 10/27/2012
Expires:   never
Users:     unlimited

Installing this software requires agreement to the
terms and conditions set forth in the:
  Novell EULA and Export Compliance Notice

You can review this agreement again at the download site or
type "REVIEW" below.

Note: You must answer "YES" to install the software.

Have you read and agree with the license? :
```

If you want to use the text-based installation program in an environment where the GUI starts by default, use the following command in the directory where the installation program is located:

```
./installer-teaming.linux --text
```

IMPORTANT: The text-based Vibe installation program must be run in the same directory where the Vibe license file is located. If the license file is not in the same directory, the text-based installation program cannot find it.

The text-based installation program gathers the same configuration information as the GUI installation program does. This information is stored in the `installer.xml` file in the directory where you run the installation program.

The installation program does not write the information it gathers into the `installer.xml` file until you exit the installation program, and you cannot go back when you use the text-based installation program. Therefore, when you use the text-based installation program, you should plan your installation carefully in advance, using the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) or the [Advanced Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#). If you make a mistake during the installation, continue to the end of the installation process and exit the installation program normally, so that all information is saved. Then run the text-based installation program again. Your previous information is supplied as defaults, and you can change the information as needed.

Performing a Silent Installation

If your Vibe system expands beyond one server, you might need to repeatedly install the same Vibe components. A silent installation makes this an easy process.

- 1 Edit an existing `installer.xml` file so that it has the hostname of the server where you want to perform the silent installation and copy it to that server.
- 2 In the directory where the installation program is located, use the appropriate command to run the Vibe installation program, depending on the action that you want the silent installation to perform:

```
./installer-teaming.linux --silent --install  
./installer-teaming.linux --silent --upgrade  
./installer-teaming.linux --silent --reconfigure
```

The Installation program obtains all the information it needs from the `installer.xml` file and completes the installation without user interaction. If you have manually modified index server scripts, such as the `indexserver-startup.sh` file as described in [Section 15.1, “Installing the Lucene Software,” on page 131](#), all modifications will be lost when you perform a silent upgrade. To retain your modifications, you should upgrade with the GUI installation program, as described in [“Using the GUI Installation Program” on page 60](#).

5.1.3 Creating the Vibe Database

Before you can start Vibe, you need to create the Vibe database.

- 1 If you haven't done so already, install the database on the Vibe server.
For single-server installations running on Linux, it is easiest to install the MySQL database. For information about how to install the MySQL database on the Vibe server (on Linux), see [Section A.3.1, “MySQL on Linux,” on page 206](#).
For more information about installing the database for a multi-server Vibe system, see [Chapter 14, “Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server,” on page 125](#).
- 2 Ensure that the database already exists on the server that is running the Vibe software or on the remote server, depending on where you want to install the database.
- 3 Change to the following directory in your Vibe installation:

```
cd /vibe_installation/temp-installer/db/scripts/sql
```

This directory contains the following scripts for each database type (MySQL, Microsoft SQL, and Oracle):

- ♦ `mysql-create-empty-database.sql`
- ♦ `Oracle-create-empty-database.sql`
- ♦ `sqlserver-create-empty-database.sql`

- 4 (Optional) If you need to change the default database name from `sitescape` to something else, edit the `.sql` file for your database type to replace `sitescape` with the new name.

- 5 Use the database utility for your database type to run the corresponding script for your database from the `vibe_installation/temp-installer/db/scripts/sql` directory:

MySQL: `mysql -uusername -ppassword < "mysql-create-empty-database.sql"`

Microsoft SQL: `osql -Uusername -Ppassword -i sqlserver-create-empty-database.sql`

You can also use the script with the [SQL Server Express Utility \(http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?familyid=fa87e828-173f-472e-a85c-27ed01cf6b02&displaylang=en\)](http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?familyid=fa87e828-173f-472e-a85c-27ed01cf6b02&displaylang=en) to create the database.

Oracle: `sqlplus "/ as sysdba"`
`SQL>spool update-oracle.out;`
`SQL>@oracle-create-empty-database`
`SQL>quit;`

- 6 Change to the `db` directory in the Vibe installation:

```
cd /vibe_installation/temp-installer/db
```

This directory contains the following properties files:

- ♦ `mysql-liquibase.properties`
- ♦ `Oracle-liquibase.properties`
- ♦ `sqlserver-liquibase.properties`

- 7 In a text editor, open the properties file that corresponds with your database type to make any of the following changes. Save and close the text editor when you are finished making changes.

- ♦ Change the database user name and password for accessing the database.
- ♦ (Conditional) Specify the IP address for the database if it is running on a remote server. You need to replace `localhost` with the IP address of the remote server.
- ♦ (Optional) Change the name of the Vibe database (the default name of the Vibe database is `sitescape`, the name of the company that previously developed the Vibe software).

- 8 In the same directory, execute the following command to create the database schema:

```
manage-database.sh database_type updateDatabase
```

For example, if you are using a MySQL database:

```
manage-database.sh mysql updateDatabase
```

NOTE: You can safely ignore the following Liquibase log messages:

- ♦ Warning: `modifyDataType` will lose primary key/autoincrement/not null settings for `mysql`
 - ♦ Any messages that contain the words `info: failure` or `info: failed`, as long as they are associated with a type `INFO` message
-

- 9 Start the Vibe server as described in [“Starting Vibe on Linux” on page 67](#).

- 10 For security reasons, delete the password that you specified in [Step 7](#):

- 10a Change to the following directory in your Vibe installation:

```
cd /vibe_installation/temp-installer/db
```

- 10b In a text editor, open the database script that corresponds with your database type to delete the password.

- 10c Save and close the properties file.

- 11 Continue with [Section 5.1.4, “Performing Post-Installation Tasks on Linux,” on page 65](#).

5.1.4 Performing Post-Installation Tasks on Linux

- ♦ [“Installing Missing Libraries” on page 65](#)
- ♦ [“Checking for Available Hot Patches” on page 65](#)
- ♦ [“Configuring Vibe to Start Automatically on Reboot” on page 65](#)
- ♦ [“Setting Up Port Forwarding” on page 66](#)
- ♦ [“Starting Vibe on Linux” on page 67](#)
- ♦ [“Checking the Status of the Vibe Server” on page 68](#)
- ♦ [“Restarting Vibe” on page 68](#)
- ♦ [“Stopping Vibe” on page 68](#)
- ♦ [“Uninstalling Vibe” on page 68](#)

Installing Missing Libraries

After you install Vibe on SLES, you should check for and install any missing libraries.

- 1 Change to the following directory:

```
/opt/novell/teaming/stellent-converter/linux/x86
```

- 2 Run the `exporter` program.

The errors about missing input and output files are expected; you can safely ignore them.

- 3 Look for errors about missing libraries.

- 4 If there are library errors, install any libraries that are missing.

On 64-bit Linux systems, a common missing library is `libstdc++`.

You can use the following command to install the missing libraries:

```
zypper in library_file
```

Checking for Available Hot Patches

After you install Vibe, ensure that you check the Vibe download site where you downloaded the Vibe software for any hot patches that might be available.

Configuring Vibe to Start Automatically on Reboot

You can configure Vibe to start automatically each time you reboot the Linux server.

- 1 As the Linux `root` user, enter the following command:

```
chkconfig --add teaming
```

- 2 To verify that automatic startup is turned on, enter the following command:

```
chkconfig teaming
```

Setting Up Port Forwarding

In order to make Vibe available on the default HTTP/HTTPS ports of 80 and 443, you must set up port forwarding in order to forward the browser default ports (80 and 443) to the Vibe server ports (8080 and 8443). In addition, you must set up port forwarding if you want to forward the default SMTP mail host port (25) to the default Vibe internal mail host port (2525).

You can set up port forwarding in one of two ways, depending on whether you are using the Vibe server as a firewall.

- ♦ [“Using the SuSEfirewall2 File” on page 66](#)
- ♦ [“Using iptables Commands” on page 66](#)

Using the SuSEfirewall2 File

To enable port forwarding on a SUSE Linux server that uses `SuSEfirewall2`:

- 1 As the Linux `root` user, open the following file:

```
/etc/sysconfig/SuSEfirewall2
```

- 2 Find the following line:

```
FW_REDIRECT=""
```

- 3 Between the quotation marks, copy and insert the following string:

```
0/0,ip_address,tcp,80,8080 0/0,ip_address,tcp,443,8443  
                                0/0,ip_address,tcp,25,2525
```

- 4 Replace `ip_address` with the IP address of the Vibe server.
- 5 Save the `SuSEfirewall2` file, then exit the text editor.
- 6 Use the following command to restart the firewall:
- 7 Use the following command to verify that the default browser ports (80 and 443) have been forwarded to the Vibe server ports (8080 and 8443) and that the default SMTP mail host port (25) has been forwarded to the Vibe internal mail host:

```
iptables-save | grep REDIRECT
```

Now, users do not need to include a port number in the Vibe site URL.

Using iptables Commands

To use `iptables` commands to enable port forwarding on any type of Linux server:

- 1 As the Linux `root` user, change to the `/etc/init.d` directory.
- 2 In a text editor, create a new file for a set of `iptables` commands, for example:
- 3 Copy and paste the following lines into the `vibe-iptables` file:

```
gedit vibe-iptables
```

```

iptables -t nat -A OUTPUT -d localhost -p tcp --dport 80
                                           -j REDIRECT --to-ports 8080

iptables -t nat -A OUTPUT -d hostname -p tcp --dport 80
                                           -j REDIRECT --to-ports 8080

iptables -t nat -A PREROUTING -d hostname -p tcp --dport 80
                                           -j REDIRECT --to-ports 8080

iptables -t nat -A OUTPUT -d localhost -p tcp --dport 443
                                           -j REDIRECT --to-ports 8443

iptables -t nat -A OUTPUT -d hostname -p tcp --dport 443
                                           -j REDIRECT --to-ports 8443

iptables -t nat -A PREROUTING -d hostname -p tcp --dport 443
                                           -j REDIRECT --to-ports 8443

iptables -t nat -A OUTPUT -d localhost -p tcp --dport 25
                                           -j REDIRECT --to-ports 2525

iptables -t nat -A OUTPUT -d hostname -p tcp --dport 25
                                           -j REDIRECT --to-ports 2525

iptables -t nat -A PREROUTING -d hostname -p tcp --dport 25
                                           -j REDIRECT --to-ports 2525

```

In this example, the lines are wrapped for readability. When you paste them into the text editor, if the lines are still wrapped, remove the hard returns so that you have six `iptables` commands, each on its own line.

- 4 Replace *hostname* with the hostname or IP address of the Vibe server.
- 5 Save the `vibe-iptables` file, then exit the text editor.
- 6 Use the following command to make the file executable:


```
chmod +x vibe-iptables
```
- 7 Use the following command to immediately execute the commands in the `vibe-iptables` file:


```
chkconfig vibe-iptables on
```
- 8 Use the following command to add `vibe-iptables` to future server boot initialization:


```
chkconfig --add vibe-iptables
```
- 9 Use the following command to verify that the default browser ports (80 and 443) have been forwarded to the Vibe server ports (8080 and 8443) and that the default SMTP mail host port (25) has been forwarded to the Vibe internal mail host:


```
iptables-save | grep REDIRECT
```

Now, users do not need to include a port number in the Vibe site URL.

Starting Vibe on Linux

The Vibe Installation program created a `teaming` startup script in the `/etc/init.d` directory.

- 1 In a terminal window, become `root` by entering `su -` and the `root` password.
- 2 Enter the following command to start Vibe:

```
/etc/init.d/teaming start
```

You must execute the `teaming` script as `root`, but the script runs Vibe as the user you selected in [Section 4.10.2, “Linux User ID for Vibe,” on page 56](#) and specified during installation.

You should see output similar to the following example:

```
Using CATALINA_BASE:      /opt/teaming/apache-tomcat
Using CATALINA_HOME:      /opt/teaming/apache-tomcat
Using CATALINA_TMPDIR:    /opt/teaming/apache-tomcat/temp
Using JRE_HOME:           /use/java/jdk1.6.0_02/jre
```

3 Ensure that Vibe is ready for work:

3a Change to the following directory:

```
/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/logs
```

3b Enter the following command to display the end of the Tomcat log:

```
tail --f catalina.out
```

At the end of the log file listing, you should see:

```
INFO: Server startup in nnnn ms
```

4 Press Ctrl+C when you finish viewing the `catalina.out` file.

Checking the Status of the Vibe Server

You can see if Vibe is running by checking for its process ID (PID).

1 In a terminal window, enter the following command:

```
ps -eaf | grep teaming
```

You should see the Vibe PID number, along with a listing of configuration settings.

Restarting Vibe

You need to restart Vibe whenever you use the Vibe installation program to make configuration changes, as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,” on page 115](#).

1 As `root` in a terminal window, enter the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/teaming restart
```

You should see the same output as when you originally started Vibe.

Stopping Vibe

1 As `root` in a terminal window, enter the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/teaming stop
```

You should see the same output as when you started Vibe.

2 To verify that Vibe has stopped, check for its PID number:

```
ps -eaf | grep teaming
```

The Vibe PID number, along with a listing of configuration settings, should no longer be displayed.

Uninstalling Vibe

If you move the Vibe site to a different server, you can delete the Vibe files from the original server to reclaim disk space. The default Vibe file locations are:

Vibe Software	/opt/novell/teaming
---------------	---------------------

Vibe File Repository and Lucene Index	/var/opt/novell/teaming
MySQL Database	/var/lib/mysql

For a complete list of your Vibe files, check the `installer.xml` file in the directory where you originally ran the Vibe installation program.

5.2 Windows: Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site

You should already have reviewed [Chapter 4, “Planning a Basic Vibe Installation,” on page 39](#) and filled out the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#). The following sections step you through the process of installing and starting Novell Vibe on Windows:

- [Section 5.2.1, “Performing Pre-Installation Tasks on Windows,” on page 69](#)
- [Section 5.2.2, “Running the Windows Vibe Installation Program,” on page 70](#)
- [Section 5.2.3, “Creating the Vibe Database,” on page 71](#)
- [Section 5.2.4, “Performing Post-Installation Tasks on Windows,” on page 73](#)

5.2.1 Performing Pre-Installation Tasks on Windows

- [“Verifying System Requirements” on page 69](#)
- [“Stopping an Existing Web Server” on page 69](#)
- [“Setting Environment Variables” on page 69](#)

Verifying System Requirements

Ensure that the Windows server where you plan to install Vibe meets the system requirements listed in [Section 2.1, “Vibe Server Requirements,” on page 17](#).

Stopping an Existing Web Server

If a web server is currently running on the Vibe server, stop it, and preferably disable it.

For example, to stop and disable the Internet Information Services (IIS) web server:

- 1 On the Windows desktop, click *Start > Administrative Tools > Services*.
- 2 Right-click *World Wide Web Publishing Service*, then click *Properties*.
- 3 In the *Startup type* drop-down list, select *Disabled*.
- 4 Click *Stop*, then click *OK*.

Setting Environment Variables

Ensure that the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable is set to the path where you installed the JDK and that the Windows `PATH` environment variable includes the path to your database server.

- 1 Right-click *My Computer*, then click *Properties*.
- 2 On the *Advanced* tab, click *Environment Variables*.

- 3 Set the JAVA_HOME environment variable:
 - 3a In the *System variables* box, click *New*.
 - 3b In the *Variable name* field, specify JAVA_HOME.
 - 3c In the *Variable value* field, specify the path where you installed the JDK.
 - 3d Click *OK* to add the JAVA_HOME environment variable to the list of system variables, then click *OK* again to save the setting and return to the *Advanced* tab.
- 4 Check the PATH environment variable:
 - 4a On the *Advanced* tab, click *Environment Variables*.
 - 4b In the *System variables* list, locate the PATH environment variable.
 - 4c If the path includes your database server software directory, click *Cancel*.

or

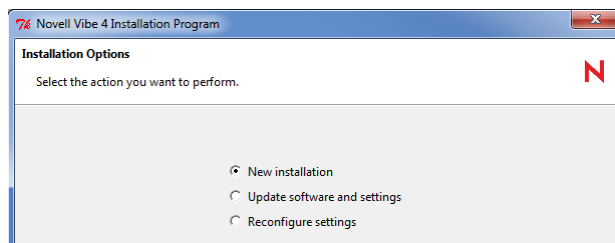
If the path does not include your database server software directory, add the directory, then click *OK*.

5.2.2 Running the Windows Vibe Installation Program

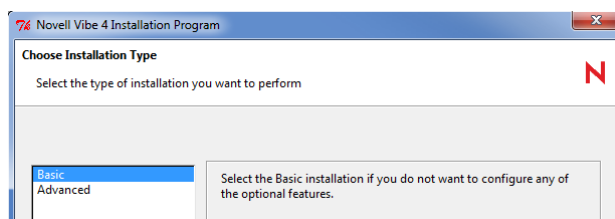
- 1 Log in to the Windows server as a user with Administrator rights.
- 2 In Windows Explorer, browse to the directory where you downloaded and extracted the Vibe software.
- 3 Ensure that there is a `license-key.xml` file in the directory.

The Vibe installation program does not start without a license file, and it has a different name when you download it.

For more information about licensing, see [Chapter 7, “Updating Your Vibe License,”](#) on page 79.
- 4 Double-click the `installer-teaming.exe` file to start the Vibe installation program.
- 5 Accept the License Agreement, then click *Next*.



- 6 Click *Next* to accept the default of *New installation*.



- 7 Click *Next* to accept the default of *Basic*.
- 8 Use the information that you have gathered on the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) to provide the information that the Vibe installation program prompts you for:

- Installation Locations
- Default Locale for Novell Vibe
- Network Information
- WebDAV Authentication Method
- Database Selection
 - Database Type
 - JDBC URL
 - Credentials
 - Setup
 - Encryption Algorithm
- Java JDK Location
- Outbound Email Configuration
 - Protocol
 - Host, Port, and Time Zone
 - User Name, Password, and Authentication
 - Allow Sending Email to All Users
- Inbound Email Configuration
- Adding File Types for HTML Conversions

The installation program stores the information that it gathers in the `installer.xml` file in the same directory where you started the installation program.

- 9 After you have provided all the requested information, click *Install* to begin the Vibe installation.
- 10 When the installation is complete, click *Finish* to exit the Vibe installation program.
 Information about the installation process is written to the `installer.log` file in the same directory where you ran the Installation program. If a problem arises during the installation, the `installer.log` file provides information that can help you resolve the problem.
- 11 Continue with [Section 5.2.3, “Creating the Vibe Database,” on page 71](#).

5.2.3 Creating the Vibe Database

Before you can start Vibe, you need to create the Vibe database.

- 1 If you haven't done so already, install the database on the Vibe server.

For single-server installations running on Windows, install either the MySQL or Microsoft SQL database. (For information about how to install the MySQL database on the Vibe server (on Windows), see [Section A.3.2, “MySQL on Windows,” on page 208](#)).

For more information about installing the database for a multi-server Vibe system, see [Chapter 14, “Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server,” on page 125](#).

- 2 Change to the following directory in your Vibe installation:

```
vibe_installation\temp-installer\db\scripts\sql
```

This directory contains the following scripts for each database type (MySQL, Microsoft SQL, and Oracle):

- ◆ `mysql-create-empty-database.sql`
- ◆ `Oracle-create-empty-database.sql`
- ◆ `sqlserver-create-empty-database.sql`

- 3 (Optional) If you need to change the default database name from `sitescape` to something else, edit the `.sql` file for your database type to replace `sitescape` with the new name.

- 4 Use the database utility for your database type to run the corresponding script for your database from the `vibe_installation/temp-installer/db/scripts/sql` directory:

MySQL: `mysql -uusername -ppassword < "mysql-create-empty-database.sql"`

Microsoft SQL: `osql -Uusername -Ppassword -i sqlserver-create-empty-database.sql`

You can also use the script with the [SQL Server Express Utility \(http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?familyid=fa87e828-173f-472e-a85c-27ed01cf6b02&displaylang=en\)](http://www.microsoft.com/downloads/details.aspx?familyid=fa87e828-173f-472e-a85c-27ed01cf6b02&displaylang=en) to create the database.

Oracle: `sqlplus "/ as sysdba"`
`SQL>spool update-oracle.out;`
`SQL>@oracle-create-empty-database`
`SQL>quit;`

- 5 Change to the `db` directory in the Vibe installation:

`vibe_installation\temp-installer\db`

This directory contains the following properties files:

- ♦ `mysql-liquibase.properties`
- ♦ `Oracle-liquibase.properties`
- ♦ `sqlserver-liquibase.properties`

- 6 In a text editor, open the properties file that corresponds with your database type to make any of the following changes. Save and close the text editor when you are finished making changes.

- ♦ Change the database user name and password for accessing the database.
- ♦ (Conditional) Specify the IP address for the database if it is running on a remote server. You need to replace `localhost` with the IP address of the remote server.
- ♦ (Optional) Change the name of the Vibe database (the default name of the Vibe database is `sitescape`, the name of the company that previously developed the Vibe software).

- 7 In the same directory, execute the following command to create the database schema:

`manage-database.bat database_type updateDatabase`

For example, if you are using a Microsoft SQL database:

`manage-database.bat sqlserver updateDatabase`

NOTE: You can safely ignore the following Liquibase log messages:

- ♦ Warning: `modifyDataType` will lose primary key/autoincrement/not null settings for `mysql`
 - ♦ Any messages that contain the words `info: failure` or `info: failed`, as long as they are associated with a type `INFO` message
-

- 8 Start the Vibe server as described in [“Starting Vibe on Linux” on page 67](#).

- 9 For security reasons, delete the password that you specified in [Step 7](#):

9a Change to the following directory in your Vibe installation:

`cd /vibe_installation/temp-installer/db`

9b In a text editor, open the database script that corresponds with your database type to delete the password.

- 10 Continue with [Section 5.2.4, “Performing Post-Installation Tasks on Windows,” on page 73](#).

5.2.4 Performing Post-Installation Tasks on Windows

- ♦ [“Checking for Available Hot Patches” on page 73](#)
- ♦ [“Running Vibe as a Windows Service” on page 73](#)
- ♦ [“Running Vibe as a Windows Application” on page 74](#)
- ♦ [“Uninstalling Vibe” on page 74](#)

Checking for Available Hot Patches

After you install Vibe, ensure that you check on the Vibe download site where you downloaded the Vibe software for any hot patches that might be available.

Running Vibe as a Windows Service

- ♦ [“Configuring Vibe as a Windows Service” on page 73](#)
- ♦ [“Starting Vibe as a Windows Service” on page 73](#)
- ♦ [“Configuring the Vibe Service to Start Automatically on Reboot” on page 74](#)
- ♦ [“Restarting the Vibe Service” on page 74](#)
- ♦ [“Stopping the Vibe Service” on page 74](#)

Configuring Vibe as a Windows Service

The Vibe installation program created a `service.bat` file for configuring Vibe to run as a Windows service.

- 1 In a Command Prompt window, change to the following directory:

```
c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\bin\windows
```

- 2 In the windows directory, copy the files from the appropriate subdirectory.

The following subdirectories exist: x86, x64, ia64.

If you are unsure which subdirectory is appropriate for your server, use the `readme.txt` file located in the `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\bin\windows` directory as a reference.

- 3 Paste the files into the `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\bin` directory.
- 4 Use the following command to configure Vibe as a Windows service:

```
service.bat install Teaming
```

This creates a service named Apache Tomcat Teaming.

Starting Vibe as a Windows Service

- 1 On the Windows desktop, click *Start > Administrative Tools > Services*.
- 2 Right-click *Apache Tomcat Teaming*, then click *Start*.

Configuring the Vibe Service to Start Automatically on Reboot

When you run Vibe as a Windows service, you can configure Vibe to start automatically each time you reboot the Windows server.

- 1 On the Windows desktop, click *Start > Administrative Tools > Services*.
- 2 Right-click *Apache Tomcat Teaming*, then click *Properties*.
- 3 In the *Startup type* drop-down list, select *Automatic*, then click *OK*.

Restarting the Vibe Service

You need to restart Vibe whenever you use the Vibe installation program to make configuration changes, as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,” on page 115](#).

- 1 On the Windows desktop, click *Start > Administrative Tools > Services*.
- 2 Right-click *Apache Tomcat Teaming*, then click *Restart*.
- 3 Close the Services window.

Stopping the Vibe Service

- 1 On the Windows desktop, click *Start > Administrative Tools > Services*.
- 2 Right-click *Apache Tomcat Teaming*, then click *Stop*.
- 3 Close the Services window.

Running Vibe as a Windows Application

- ♦ [“Starting Vibe as an Application” on page 74](#)
- ♦ [“Stopping Vibe as an Application” on page 74](#)

Starting Vibe as an Application

The Vibe installation program created a `startup.bat` file for starting Vibe.

- 1 In a Command Prompt window, change to the following directory:
`c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\bin`
- 2 Run the `startup.bat` file to start Vibe as an application.

Stopping Vibe as an Application

- 1 In a Command Prompt window, change to the following directory:
`c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\bin`
- 2 Run the `shutdown.bat` file to stop the Vibe application.

Uninstalling Vibe

If you move the Vibe site to a different server, you can delete the Vibe files from the original server to reclaim disk space. The default Vibe file locations are:

Vibe Software	c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming
Vibe File Repository and Lucene Index	c:\Novell\Teaming
MS SQL Database	c:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL\Data

For a complete list of your Vibe files, check the `installer.xml` file in the directory where you originally ran the Vibe Installation program.

6 Adding Users to Your Vibe Site

After you have installed Novell Vibe and ensured that Vibe starts successfully, you are ready to access your Vibe site from your web browser and add users.

- ♦ [Section 6.1, “Accessing Your Basic Vibe Site as the Site Administrator,” on page 77](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.2, “Creating a User,” on page 77](#)
- ♦ [Section 6.3, “Adding Vibe Users from Your LDAP Directory,” on page 78](#)

6.1 Accessing Your Basic Vibe Site as the Site Administrator

- 1 In your web browser, specify one of the following URLs, depending on whether you are using a secure SSL connection:

```
http://vibe_hostname  
https://vibe_hostname
```

Replace *vibe_hostname* with the hostname or fully qualified domain name of the Vibe server that you have set up in DNS. If you configured the HTTP ports correctly during installation, you do not need to include the port number in the Vibe URL.



- 2 If this is the first time you have logged in to the Vibe site, log in using `admin` as the login name and `admin` as the password.

The Change Password dialog box is automatically displayed when you first log in to the Vibe site.

If this is not your first time logging in, log in using `admin` as the login name and your password.

6.2 Creating a User

For information about how to create a local user in the Vibe system, see [“Creating a New Local User”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

6.3 Adding Vibe Users from Your LDAP Directory

Unless you have a very small Novell Vibe site, you create Vibe users by synchronizing their user information from an LDAP directory service such as Novell eDirectory or Microsoft Active Directory.

For information about how to add users to your Vibe system via LDAP, see “[Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

IMPORTANT: Consider the following before you add users to your Vibe system:


- ♦ For a large Vibe site with thousands of users, the synchronization process can consume substantial server resources and can take some time to complete. Perform the initial import from the LDAP directory at a time when this processing does not conflict with other activities on the server.
 - ♦ After they are added to the Vibe system, users could log into the Vibe site by using their eDirectory or Active Directory user names and passwords. However, you should not invite users to access the Vibe site until after you have finished setting up the Vibe site, as described in “[Site Setup](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.
-

7 Updating Your Vibe License

Several Vibe license types are available:

- ♦ **Evaluation License:** Available from [Novell Downloads \(http://download.novell.com\)](http://download.novell.com).
You receive your 60-day evaluation license when you download the evaluation version of Vibe.
- ♦ **Starter Pack License:** Available from [Novell Downloads \(http://download.novell.com\)](http://download.novell.com) and from the [Novell Vibe Starter Pack web page \(http://www.novell.com/products/teaming/starterpack.html\)](http://www.novell.com/products/teaming/starterpack.html).
You receive your 10-user starter pack license when you download the 10-user starter pack.
- ♦ **Standard Vibe License:** Purchased through a Novell sales representative or Novell partner.
The Standard Vibe License gives full Vibe functionality on a per-user basis.
After you purchase the Standard Vibe License, you can access your license key or view your purchase history in the [Novell Customer Center \(http://www.novell.com/customercenter\)](http://www.novell.com/customercenter).

If you are upgrading to a new version of Vibe, or if you originally installed Vibe with an Evaluation License or a Starter Pack License, it is easy to update your Vibe site with a new license file.

- 1 Copy the new license file that you downloaded from one of the sources listed above into the directory where you originally ran the Vibe installation program.
- 2 Rename the existing `license-key.xml` file to a different name.
- 3 Rename the new license file to `license-key.xml`.
- 4 Stop Vibe.
- 5 Run the Vibe Installation program, select the *Reconfigure Settings* option, then select the *Basic Installation* option.
- 6 Click *Next* through all the installation program pages, then click *Install* to update your Vibe license.
- 7 Start Vibe.
- 8 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 9 Click the *admin* link in the upper-right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
- 10 Under *Management*, click *License*.
- 11 If the contents of the new license file are not displayed, click *Reload Vibe License*.
- 12 Click *Close*.

At any time, you can generate a report of license usage, as described in “[License Report](#)” in “[Site Maintenance](#)” in the [Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide](#).

8 Setting Up Vibe

After you have installed and started Novell Vibe, there are still administrative tasks to perform before your Vibe site is ready for users to log in and use Vibe efficiently. Refer to the following sections of the [Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide](#) as you finish setting up your Vibe site.

- ◆ [“Setting Up Initial Workspaces”](#)
- ◆ [“Planning and Controlling User Access to Workspaces and Folders”](#)
- ◆ [“Setting Up User Access to the Vibe Site”](#)
- ◆ [“Setting Up Site-Wide Customizations”](#)
- ◆ [“Configuring Vibe to Support WebDAV on Windows 7”](#)
- ◆ [“Configuring Email Integration”](#)
- ◆ [“Configuring Weekends and Holidays”](#)
- ◆ [“Configuring Real-Time Communication Tools”](#)
- ◆ [“Enabling Custom JSPs to Be Used on Your Vibe Site”](#)
- ◆ [“Enabling Custom JAR Files to Be Used on Your Vibe Site”](#)
- ◆ [“Setting Up Mirrored Folders”](#)
- ◆ [“Setting Up Zones \(Virtual Vibe Sites\)”](#)
- ◆ [“Adding Software Extensions to Your Vibe Site”](#)
- ◆ [“Using Remote Applications on Your Vibe Site”](#)
- ◆ [“Managing a Multiple-Language Vibe Site”](#)

9 Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet

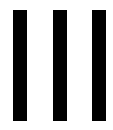
Installation Program Field	Value for Your Vibe Site	Explanation
Vibe Server Platform: <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Windows♦ Linux		See Section 4.2.1, "Vibe Server Platform," on page 40.
Vibe Server Architecture: <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ 32-bit♦ 64-bit		See Section 4.2.2, "Vibe Server Architecture," on page 40.
Vibe Server Memory: <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ 4 GB♦ 8 GB♦ More		See Section 4.2.3, "Vibe Server Memory," on page 41.
Java Development Kit (JDK): <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Sun JDK♦ IBM JDK		See Section 4.3, "Selecting a Java Development Kit," on page 43.
Vibe Installation Locations: <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Software Linux default: <code>/opt/novell/teaming</code> Windows default: <code>c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming</code>♦ File repository Linux default: <code>/var/opt/novell/teaming</code> Windows default: <code>c:\Novell\Teaming</code>		See Section 4.2.4, "Vibe Installation Locations," on page 42.
TrueType Font Location: Default: <code>/usr/X11R6/lib/X11/fonts/truetype</code>		See Section 4.2.5, "TrueType Font Location (Linux Only)," on page 43.

Installation Program Field	Value for Your Vibe Site	Explanation
Vibe Site Locale:		See Section 4.12 , “Accommodating Multiple Languages,” on page 57.
Language:		
<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Chinese-Simplified♦ Chinese Traditional♦ Danish♦ Dutch♦ English♦ French♦ German♦ Hungarian♦ Japanese♦ Polish♦ Portuguese♦ Russian♦ Spanish♦ Swedish		
Country:		
User ID for Novell Vibe (Linux only):		See Section 4.10.2 , “Linux User ID for Vibe,” on page 56.
<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ User ID: <p>Full name:</p> <p>Password:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Group ID:		
Network Information:		See Section 4.4 , “Gathering Network Information for Your Vibe Site,” on page 43.
<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Host:♦ HTTP port: 80♦ Secure HTTP port: 443♦ Listen port: 8080♦ Secure listen port: 8443♦ Shutdown port:♦ AJP port:		
WebDAV Authenticaiton Method:		See Section 4.5 , “Planning the WebDAV Authentication Method,” on page 46.
<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ basic♦ digest		

Installation Program Field	Value for Your Vibe Site	Explanation
Database Type:		See Section 4.6.1, "Database Type," on page 48.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ MySQL ♦ Microsoft SQL ♦ Oracle 		
JDBC URL:		See Section 4.6.3, "Database Location," on page 49.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Hostname: ♦ Port number: 		
Database Credentials:		See Section 4.6.4, "Database Credentials," on page 50.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ User name: ♦ Password: 		
Database Setup Method:		See Section 4.6.2, "Database Setup Method," on page 49.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Basic installation (same server as Vibe software) ♦ Remote installation 		
Database Encryption Algorithm:		See Section 4.6.5, "Database Encryption Algorithm," on page 50.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ SHA-256 ♦ PBEWITHSHA256AND128BITAES-CBC-BC 		
Java JDK Location:		See Section 4.3, "Selecting a Java Development Kit," on page 43.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Java home: ♦ JVM heap size: 		
Outbound Email Protocol:		See Section 4.7.1, "Outbound Email Protocol," on page 51.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ SMTP ♦ SMTPS 		
Outbound Email Host:		See Section 4.7.2, "Outbound Email Host," on page 52.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Hostname: ♦ SMTP port: Default: 25 ♦ Time zone <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Continent/region: ♦ Country/state: ♦ City: 		
Outbound Email Authentication:		See Section 4.7.3, "Outbound Email Authentication," on page 52.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ User name: ♦ Password: ♦ Authentication required? No / Yes 		

Installation Program Field	Value for Your Vibe Site	Explanation
Allow Sending Email to All Users Yes / No		See Section 4.7.4, "Outbound Email Send Restriction," on page 53.
From email address override <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Email address for outbound email Use this email address for all outbound email Yes / No		See Section 4.7.5, "Outbound Email From Address," on page 53.
Inbound Email Configuration <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Enable: No / Yes ♦ SMTP bind address: ♦ SMTP port: ♦ Announce TLS: Yes / No 		See Section 4.8, "Enabling Inbound Email," on page 53.
File Types for HTML Conversions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Added HTML Extensions: 		See Section 4.9, "Adding File Types for HTML Conversions," on page 55
Vibe Site Password: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Administrator user name: admin ♦ Default password: admin ♦ Your password: 		See Section 4.10.1, "Vibe Site Administrator Password," on page 55.
LDAP Directory Service: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ Novell eDirectory ♦ Microsoft Active Directory ♦ Other LDAP directory 		See "Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory" in the <i>Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide</i> .
LDAP Server: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ LDAP server URL: ♦ User DN: ♦ Password: 		See "Server Information" in the <i>Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide</i> .
GUID Attribute (to identify the user): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ♦ GUID screenName=GUID ♦ object GUID screenName=objectGUID 		See "Server Information" in the <i>Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide</i> .

Installation Program Field	Value for Your Vibe Site	Explanation
LDAP Attribute for Vibe Name:		See “ Server Information ” in the <i>Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide</i> .
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ cn screenName=cn ◆ uid screenName=uid 		
LDAP User Search Context:		See “ Configuring User Synchronization Options ” in the <i>Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide</i> .
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Base DN: ◆ Additional filter attributes: ◆ Search subtree: Yes / No 		
LDAP Group Search Context:		See “ Configuring Group Synchronization Options ” in the <i>Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide</i> .
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Base DN: ◆ Additional filter attributes: ◆ Search Subtree: Yes / No 		
LDAP Synchronization Schedule:		See “ Configuring the Synchronization Schedule ” in the <i>Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide</i> .
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Days <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Every day ◆ Weekly Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat ◆ Hours: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ At time: ◆ Repeat every <i>nn</i> hours 		
LDAP User Options:		See “ Configuring User Synchronization Options ” in the <i>Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide</i> .
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Synchronize user profiles ◆ Register LDAP user profiles automatically ◆ Delete users that are not in LDAP ◆ When deleting a user, delete associated user workspaces and content ◆ Time zone for new users 		
LDAP Group Options:		See “ Configuring User Synchronization Options ” in the <i>Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide</i> .
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◆ Synchronize group profiles ◆ Register LDAP group profiles automatically ◆ Synchronize group membership ◆ Delete local groups that are not in LDAP 		



Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration

- ♦ [Chapter 10, “Planning an Advanced Vibe Installation,” on page 91](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,” on page 115](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 12, “Setting Configuration Options after Installation,” on page 117](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 13, “Advanced Vibe Installation Summary Sheet,” on page 119](#)

10 Planning an Advanced Vibe Installation

The Advanced installation provides additional options for you to customize Novell Vibe.

- ♦ [Section 10.1, “What Is an Advanced Installation?,” on page 91](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.2, “Distributing Different Data Types to Different Locations,” on page 92](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.3, “Using Advanced Network Information Settings,” on page 93](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.4, “Configuring Requests and Connections Configuration,” on page 94](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.5, “Configuring Web Services,” on page 95](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.6, “Changing Your Lucene Index Server Configuration,” on page 95](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.7, “Managing RSS Feeds,” on page 97](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.8, “Configuring Presence,” on page 98](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.9, “Configuring Single Sign-On with Novell Access Manager,” on page 99](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.10, “Configuring Single Sign-On with Internet Information Services for Windows,” on page 99](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.11, “Configuring Mirrored Folder Resource Drivers,” on page 112](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.12, “Installing the Vibe Software in a Clustered Environment,” on page 114](#)

As you proceed with planning, you can use the [Advanced Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) to record your decisions about the options you want to use.

10.1 What Is an Advanced Installation?

In addition to the Basic installation options described in [Section 4.1, “What Is a Basic Vibe Installation?,” on page 39](#), the installation program for Vibe provides several advanced installation and configuration alternatives. You can implement the advanced options after performing a Basic installation, or you can have the installation program present all the options together.

Compared to a Basic installation, an Advanced installation offers the following additional options:

- ♦ Changing the session timeout
- ♦ Specifying a keystore file
- ♦ Specifying different directories for different types of data
- ♦ Configuring requests and connections configuration
- ♦ Disabling and enabling four different web services
- ♦ Changing the configuration of the Lucene Index Server
- ♦ Configuring a remote Lucene Index Server or a group of high-availability Lucene nodes
- ♦ Reconfiguring how RSS feeds are retained or disabling them entirely
- ♦ Enabling presence in conjunction with Novell Messenger
- ♦ Configuring a reverse proxy to accommodate single sign-on
- ♦ Configuring Windows Authentication

- ♦ Configuring mirrored folders
- ♦ Installing Vibe in a clustered environment

IMPORTANT: The following Vibe configurations require that you perform an Advanced installation as your initial installation of the Vibe software:

- ♦ Setting up the Vibe file repository so that some types of files are located outside the Vibe file repository root directory. See [Section 10.2, “Distributing Different Data Types to Different Locations,” on page 92](#) for Advanced installation instructions. You cannot move subdirectories within the Vibe file repository after they have been created.
- ♦ Installing the Vibe software on multiple servers to create a clustered environment. See [Chapter 16, “Running Vibe on Multiple Servers,” on page 135](#) for Advanced installation instructions. The option to enable a clustered environment is available only during an Advanced installation.

If you want to implement an Advanced installation option, you should perform a Basic installation first, in a test environment, before performing the Advanced installation to set up your permanent Vibe site.

10.2 Distributing Different Data Types to Different Locations

The default location for the Novell Vibe file repository varies by platform:

Linux: /var/opt/novell/teaming

Windows: c:\Novell\Teaming

Under the main Vibe file repository root directory are subdirectories for various kinds of data files that are not stored in the Vibe database (MySQL, Microsoft SQL Server, or Oracle). You can use an Advanced installation to store Vibe data files in various locations.

The data files not stored in the Vibe database are divided into several functional areas:

- ♦ **Simple file repository:** A large consumer of disk space.

All attachment files are stored in the file repository. All versions of files are also stored here.

- ♦ **Jackrabbit repository:** (Optional) Takes only a fraction of the space consumed by the file repository.

By default, Vibe stores all data files individually on disk, in the file repository. If you prefer to store data files in the database itself, you can use Apache Jackrabbit with Vibe. See the [Apache Jackrabbit website \(http://jackrabbit.apache.org\)](http://jackrabbit.apache.org) for setup instructions.

- ♦ **Extensions repository:** Disk space consumption depends on the number of extensions you add to your Vibe site.

An extension is a software program that you can incorporate into your Vibe site in order to enhance (extend) Vibe capabilities. Adblock Plus is an example of a Firefox browser extension that filters out advertisements. You or a Java developer can create custom extensions for your Vibe site. For more information about creating and using Vibe extensions, see the [Novell Vibe 4.0 Developer Guide](#).

- ♦ **Archive store:** A large consumer of disk space.

When entries are deleted, files that were attached to the deleted entries are retained in the archive store in order to meet compliance and archival goals. Previous versions of documents are also retained in the archive store. After files have been archived, they are inaccessible from the Vibe site. Files that accumulate in the archive store must be manually deleted as needed to manage the disk space occupied by the archive store.

- ♦ **Cache store:** Consumes less disk space than the file repository.

Information derived from the attachments (such as thumbnails, HTML renderings, scaled images), and word lists for indexing are stored in the cache store.

- ♦ **Lucene index:** Takes only a fraction of the space consumed by the file repository.

The Lucene index contains only pointers to the actual data stored in the file repository. The index enables the Lucene search engine to perform very fast searches through large quantities of data.

The directories for the various types of data can be on the Vibe server or on a remote server. Data access is fastest if the data is local; however, depending on the size of your Vibe site and the types of data you store, the Vibe server might not be the best place to store all the Vibe data. If you want to store any of the data types on a remote server, you must ensure that the remote location of the data appears local to the Vibe server and that it is always available with read/write access.

Linux: Mount the file repository to the Vibe server.

Windows: Map a drive from the Vibe server to the file repository.

Linux and Windows: Place the file repository on a SAN (storage area network) with read/write access. This alternative provides the most reliable remote location for the Vibe file repository. This is required for a clustered environment, as described in [Chapter 16, "Running Vibe on Multiple Servers," on page 135](#).

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Data Locations*, specify the directories where you want to store the various types of Vibe data.

Complete the planning process for additional Advanced installation features as needed, then perform the Advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, "Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation," on page 115](#).

10.3 Using Advanced Network Information Settings

- ♦ [Section 10.3.1, "Changing the Vibe Session Timeout," on page 93](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.3.2, "Providing a Secure Keystore File," on page 94](#)

10.3.1 Changing the Vibe Session Timeout

By default, if a user's Novell Vibe session is idle for four hours (240 minutes), Vibe logs the idle user out. For increased convenience to Vibe users, you can make the session timeout interval longer. For increased security for your Vibe site, you can make the session timeout shorter.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Network Information*, specify the session timeout interval (in minutes) for your Vibe site.

Complete the planning process for additional Advanced installation features as needed, then perform the Advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,”](#) on [page 115](#).

10.3.2 Providing a Secure Keystore File

For your convenience, the Vibe software includes a self-signed public certificate that enables you to specify secure HTTP and listen ports during installation. This certificate is stored in the `.keystore` file in the following directory:

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/conf`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\conf`

To ensure secure SSL connections for your Vibe site, you should replace the self-signed public certificate with a public certificate issued by a valid certificate authority.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Network Information*, specify the name and location of the public certificate.

If you do not already have a permanent public certificate for your Vibe server, see [“Securing HTTP Browser Connections”](#) in [“Site Security”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

Complete the planning process for additional Advanced installation features as needed, then perform the Advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,”](#) on [page 115](#).

10.4 Configuring Requests and Connections Configuration

You can configure the number of client requests and database connections that Vibe is able to support.

If you have an extremely large Vibe site and you need to make numerous client requests and database connections, you might see improved performance by increasing these settings.

- ♦ **Max Threads:** The maximum number of simultaneous client request threads that Vibe is able to support. The default is 200 threads.
- ♦ **Max Active:** The maximum number of database connections that can be allocated from this pool at the same time.

If your database server license (for Oracle or MS SQL) restricts you from having more connections than the Vibe default of 50, you must specify a number that does not exceed your database server license.
- ♦ **Max Idle:** The maximum number of database connections that can be idle in this pool at the same time. The default is 20 connections.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Requests and Connections Configuration*, mark the maximum client request threads, maximum active database connections, and maximum idle database connections.

Complete the planning process for additional Advanced installation features as needed, then perform the Advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,” on page 115](#).

10.5 Configuring Web Services

When you install and set up your Novell Vibe site, three web services are enabled by default; a fourth is available for selection. These web services enable programs to access information on your Vibe site just as users would. Allowing programmatic access to your Vibe site can be useful or can be viewed as a security risk.

- ♦ **WSS authentication:** Uses [OASIS Web Services Security \(WSS\)](http://www.oasis-open.org) (<http://www.oasis-open.org>).
- ♦ **HTTP Basic authentication:** Uses [HTTP Basic Access authentication](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2617) (<http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc2617>).
- ♦ **Token-based authentication:** Uses custom Vibe tokens to communicate with Vibe remote applications. For more information, see “[Using Remote Applications on Your Vibe Site](#)” in “[Site Setup](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.
- ♦ **Anonymous access:** Allows access to your Vibe site without authentication. It is similar to the Guest access provided for users, as described in “[Allowing Guest Access to Your Vibe Site](#)” in “[Site Setup](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Web Services*, mark which web services you want enabled for your Vibe site. The first three are enabled by default. The fourth is disabled by default.

Complete the planning process for additional Advanced installation features as needed, then perform the Advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,” on page 115](#).

10.6 Changing Your Lucene Index Server Configuration

The default Lucene Index Server configuration is appropriate for a medium-sized Novell Vibe site. If you have a larger Vibe site, you can change its Lucene Index Server configuration.

- ♦ [Section 10.6.1, “Understanding Indexing,” on page 95](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.6.2, “Changing Lucene Configuration Settings,” on page 96](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.6.3, “Running the Lucene Index Server in Its Own JVM,” on page 96](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.6.4, “Running the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server,” on page 97](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.6.5, “Running Multiple Lucene Index Servers,” on page 97](#)

After planning your Lucene configuration, complete the planning process for additional Advanced installation features as needed, then perform the Advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,” on page 115](#).

10.6.1 Understanding Indexing

The Lucene Index Server is responsible for indexing all data on the Vibe site so that Vibe users can easily use the Find and Search features to retrieve the information that they need. Text posted in folder entries is easy to index, because the formatting is simple. However, text in attached files arrives

in many different file formats, many of which require conversion before the text in the files can be indexed. Therefore, the Lucene Index Server is dependent on the available file conversion technology in order to perform its indexing function. For information about the file viewers that Vibe uses, see [Section 2.5.1, “File Viewer Support,” on page 23](#).

The Lucene Index Server provides additional services on your Vibe site in addition to indexing. In fact, you cannot access your Vibe site if the Lucene Index Server is not running. For this reason, Novell Vibe provides multi-server Lucene configuration options that are not available in Kablink Vibe.

10.6.2 Changing Lucene Configuration Settings

If you have an extremely large Vibe site and you need to reindex the Vibe data, you might see improved performance by increasing these settings.

- ♦ **Max booleans:** The default is 10000. This means that 10,000 Boolean clauses are allowed in a query. You need to increase this only if your Vibe site includes more than 10,000 users, groups, or teams.
- ♦ **RAM in MB that may be used for buffering:** The default is 256 MB for remote and high availability Lucene configurations and 32 MB for local Lucene configurations. This is the amount of RAM that is allocated for buffering documents and deletions before they are flushed to the directory. (This setting can be changed only in the Lucene installer; it is not available in the Vibe installer.)
- ♦ **Merge factor:** The default is 10. This sets the number of index segments that are created on disk. When additional index segments are needed, existing segments are merged to keep the merge factor constant.
- ♦ **Network interface for RMI service:** (Optional) Specify the IP address or hostname for the network interface for the RMI ([Remote Method Invocation \(http://java.sun.com/javase/technologies/core/basic/rmi/index.jsp\)](http://java.sun.com/javase/technologies/core/basic/rmi/index.jsp)) service.

This is the hostname of the server where the Lucene Index is installed.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Lucene Configuration*, specify any Lucene configuration settings that you want to change.

10.6.3 Running the Lucene Index Server in Its Own JVM

By default, the Lucene Index Server runs in the same Java Virtual Machine (JVM) as the Vibe software. To leave more memory available for the Novell Vibe software, you can configure the Lucene Index Server to run in a separate JVM. In this configuration, it communicates with the Vibe software using the RMI ([Remote Method Invocation \(http://java.sun.com/javase/technologies/core/basic/rmi/index.jsp\)](http://java.sun.com/javase/technologies/core/basic/rmi/index.jsp)) port, which by default is 1199.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Lucene Configuration*, specify a hostname of `localhost`. Use the default RMI port number unless it is already in use on the server.

To change from running the Lucene Index Server in the same JVM with Vibe to running it in its own JVM, you must complete the same steps that you use for setting up the Lucene Index Server on a remote server. This includes manually installing the Lucene Index Server software on the Vibe server, as described in [Chapter 15, “Installing the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server,” on page 131](#).

10.6.4 Running the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server

If the Lucene Index Server requires more memory, disk space, or CPU resources than are available on the Novell Vibe server, you can move it to a remote server. This requires installing the Lucene Index Server software on that server. For instructions, see [Chapter 15, “Installing the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server,” on page 131](#).

10.6.5 Running Multiple Lucene Index Servers

Because the availability of the index is critical to the functioning of the Novell Vibe site, you can install multiple Lucene Index Servers on multiple remote servers to provide high availability. For instructions, see [Chapter 17, “Running Multiple Lucene Index Servers,” on page 143](#).

10.7 Managing RSS Feeds

By default, Novell Vibe users can set up RSS feeds in folders on the Vibe site, as described in “[Viewing Folders as RSS or Atom Feeds](#)” in “[Getting Informed](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 User Guide*.

- ♦ [Section 10.7.1, “Configuring RSS Feeds,” on page 97](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.7.2, “Disabling RSS Feeds,” on page 97](#)

After planning the RSS settings, complete the planning process for additional Advanced installation features as needed, then perform the Advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,” on page 115](#).

10.7.1 Configuring RSS Feeds

The following aspects of RSS functionality on your Vibe site are configurable:

- ♦ **Max elapsed days:** By default, items from RSS feeds are retained on the Vibe site for 31 days. You can decrease the number of days to reduce the amount of disk space occupied by the RSS files.
- ♦ **Max inactive days:** By default, if no one on the Vibe site accesses an RSS feed for 7 days, the feed is no longer updated. Increase or decrease the retention time for inactive feeds to meet the needs of Vibe users and disk space considerations.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *RSS Configuration*, specify the number of days that meet the needs of your Vibe site.

10.7.2 Disabling RSS Feeds

Some administrators consider RSS feeds to be a security risk because the RSS feed URL includes user name and password information. If you do not want Vibe site users to be able to subscribe to RSS feeds from the Vibe site, you can disable this feature.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *RSS Configuration*, mark *No*.

10.8 Configuring Presence

If you are using Novell Messenger as your instant messaging solution, you can configure Novell Vibe to display a user's Messenger presence information. For information about where presence information is displayed in Vibe, see [“Sending an Instant Message from within Vibe”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 User Guide*.

When you click a user's presence icon, the Profile Quick View is displayed. This enables you to send an instant message to the user, view the user's personal workspace, follow the user, and more.

In order to configure Messenger presence to be displayed in Vibe, you need the following information about the Messenger system during the Vibe installation:

- ♦ **Server address:** Specify the IP address or DNS hostname of the messaging agent for your Messenger system.
- ♦ **Port:** Specify the port number.
- ♦ **Server user:** Specify the fully typed, comma-delimited context user name of the Allowed Service User that you want to log in to the Messenger system and retrieve presence information.

For example, `cn=vibesvc,o=acme`

For more information about the Allowed Service User, see [“Integrating Novell Vibe with Novell Messenger”](#) in the *Novell Messenger 2.2 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Password:** Specify the password for the Allowed Service User that you want to log in to the Messenger system and retrieve presence information.

For more information about the Allowed Service User, see [“Integrating Novell Vibe with Novell Messenger”](#) in the *Novell Messenger 2.2 Administration Guide*.

- ♦ **Server Certificate:** Browse to and select the Messaging Agent's SSL certificate. Vibe uses this certificate to identify the Messenger server.

If Messenger is installed on a separate server, copy the certificate from the Messenger server and place it in a location on the Vibe server that can be reached from the Vibe installation program.

The certificate is located in the following directory on the Messenger server:

Linux: `/opt/novell/messenger/certs`

Windows: `c:\Novell\Messenger\certs`

To remove the certificate after you have already selected it, click *Browse > Cancel*.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Presence Configuration*, select *Enable Novell Messenger Presence*, then list the information that the Vibe site needs to know in order to communicate with the Messenger system.

Complete the planning process for additional Advanced installation features as needed, then perform the Advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,”](#) on page 115.

IMPORTANT: In order for Messenger presence to display in Vibe when using LDAP, you need to map `presenceID` to your authentication attribute in the Vibe LDAP configuration page. For example, `presenceID=cn`. For more information, see [“Configuring Presence”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*

10.9 Configuring Single Sign-On with Novell Access Manager

Novell Access Manager provides secure single sign-on access to your Novell Vibe site by functioning as a reverse proxy server. Access Manager 3.1 SP1 IR1 is required for use with Novell Vibe. You can download the required version of Access Manager from [Novell Downloads \(http://download.novell.com\)](http://download.novell.com).

For background information about setting up Novell Access Manager 3.1, see the [Access Manager 3.1 Documentation website \(http://www.novell.com/documentation/novellaccessmanager31\)](http://www.novell.com/documentation/novellaccessmanager31). For instructions specific to Vibe, see “Configuring a Protected Resource for a Novell Vibe Server” in the [Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide](#).

After you have configured Novell Access Manager, you must configure your Vibe site with the IP address of one or more Access Gateway servers and with the logout URL. When you configure the Vibe site to use the Access Gateway, the IP addresses that you specify are the only locations from which the Vibe site accepts logins. The logout URL is the location where users find themselves when they log out of the Vibe site.

When you enable the Access Gateway for use with your Vibe site, all Vibe users must log in through the Access Gateway. It is not possible to set up the Vibe site so that some users log in through the Access Gateway and some do not.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Reverse Proxy Configuration*, list one or more IP addresses of Access Gateway servers that have been configured for use by Vibe. List the logout URL, and if necessary, the Access Gateway hostname for WebDAV connections.

Complete the planning process for additional Advanced installation features as needed, then perform the Advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,” on page 115](#).

10.10 Configuring Single Sign-On with Internet Information Services for Windows

Like Novell Access Manager, Windows Authentication provides Windows users with a single sign-on experience, enabling users to automatically authenticate to Novell Vibe after they log in to their individual workstations. Internet Information Services (IIS) provides this capability.

Before you implement Windows Authentication, consider the following limitations:

- ♦ IIS is best suited for an intranet environment. Because NTLM is a connection-based protocol, it does not work well with HTTP proxy servers.
- ♦ IIS does not support Guest Access.

After you configure the Vibe server to support Windows Authentication, complete the planning process for additional Advanced installation features as needed, then perform the Advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,” on page 115](#).

- ♦ [Section 10.10.1, “System Requirements,” on page 100](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.10.2, “Planning Your IIS Installation and Configuration,” on page 101](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.10.3, “Configuring the Vibe Server to Support Windows Authentication,” on page 102](#)

- ♦ [Section 10.10.4, “Running the Vibe Installation Program,” on page 108](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.10.5, “Configuring Your Browser to Allow Access to the Vibe Site,” on page 108](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.10.6, “Bypassing Windows Authentication to Configure LDAP and Perform Other Tasks,” on page 109](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.10.7, “Logging In to the Vibe Site through Windows Authentication,” on page 110](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.10.8, “Editing Files through WebDAV with Windows Authentication,” on page 110](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.10.9, “Configuring IIS to Allow Uploading of Large Files to the Vibe Site,” on page 111](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.10.10, “Configuring IIS to Load Balance in a Clustered Environment,” on page 111](#)

10.10.1 System Requirements

Windows Authentication with IIS can be enabled for Vibe only in the following environments:

Server

- ♦ Windows 2008 Server
- ♦ Windows 2008 R2 Server

IIS

- ♦ IIS 7 with IIS Manager with CGI and ISAPI components
- ♦ IIS 7.5 with IIS Manager with CGI and ISAPI components

Authentication Protocol

One of the following authentication protocols:

- ♦ NTLM
- ♦ Kerberos v5
- ♦ Negotiate/SPNEGO (wrapper for NTLM and Kerberos v5)

Domain Controller

- ♦ Active Directory Service

Vibe needs to be configured and synchronized with your Active Directory directory service. For more information about configuring LDAP synchronization within Vibe, see [Section 4.11, “Gathering Directory Services Information,” on page 56](#) and [“Synchronizing Users and Groups from an LDAP Directory”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

If you are using Kerberos as your authentication protocol, then Key Distribution Services is also required.

For more information about installing and configuring the domain controller and other domain services to support Windows Authentication, refer to the appropriate Microsoft documentation.

Client

One of the following clients:

- ♦ Windows 7
- ♦ Windows XP

Browser

One of the following browsers, configured to support Windows Authentication:

- ♦ Internet Explorer
- ♦ Firefox

For information on how to configure your browser to support Windows Authentication, see [Section 10.10.5, “Configuring Your Browser to Allow Access to the Vibe Site,” on page 108.](#)

10.10.2 Planning Your IIS Installation and Configuration

Use the information in the following table as you consider your IIS installation.

Directory: The default installation directory for the IIS plug-in is C:\Program Files\Novell. This is the recommended directory. If for some reason you choose to install the IIS plug-in in a directory other than the C:\Program Files\Novell directory, you need to modify the `isapi_redirect.properties` files, as described in [“Installing the Vibe IIS Plug-In” on page 102.](#)

External or Local Server: You can install the IIS plug-in on the same server where you are running Vibe, or you can install it on an external server. Installing IIS on an external server can have the following benefits:

- ♦ Performance improvement
- ♦ Ability to integrate with several Vibe servers in a clustered environment
- ♦ Ability to run Vibe from a non-Windows server

If you are running IIS from an external server, you need to edit the C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\conf\workers.properties file, as described in [“Installing the Vibe IIS Plug-In” on page 102.](#)

64-bit/32-bit: You can install the IIS plug-in on a 64-bit or 32-bit operating system. However, Vibe should run on a 64-bit operating system; therefore, if you install IIS on a 32-bit operating system, you should use an external server.

HTTP Ports: Regardless of whether IIS and Vibe are located on the same server or separate servers, the HTTP port and secure HTTP port for Vibe should always be 80 and 443. This ensures that when links are generated, they contain the correct hostname and port number.

These are the ports that Vibe uses to refer to the browser. In a very basic Vibe system (single server without Windows Authentication), the HTTP ports can be the same as the listen ports. However, in a Vibe system with Windows Authentication enabled, the HTTP ports correspond with the ports that the IIS server is configured to use.

Listen Ports: If you plan to run IIS on the same server as the Vibe server, you need to set the listen port and secure listen port for Vibe to something other than 80 and 443.

By default, Vibe listens on ports 80 and 443. Because IIS also uses these ports to listen on, you must reconfigure the Vibe listen ports to ports that are not currently in use, such as 8080 for the listen port and 8443 for the secure listen port.

You configure Vibe ports during the Vibe installation, as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,”](#) on page 115.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Network Information*, specify the HTTP ports and listen ports.

Under *Integration with IIS for Windows Authentication*, select *Enable Integration with IIS for Windows Authentication*, then list the logout URL.

10.10.3 Configuring the Vibe Server to Support Windows Authentication

To configure the Vibe server to support Windows Authentication, you must first configure IIS. You can set up IIS on the same server where Vibe is running, or on a separate server. See [Section 10.10.2, “Planning Your IIS Installation and Configuration,”](#) on page 101 for more information.

Complete the instructions in the following sections to ensure that IIS is configured correctly to work with Vibe.

- ♦ [“Installing the Vibe IIS Plug-In”](#) on page 102
- ♦ [“Installing IIS Manager”](#) on page 103
- ♦ [“Installing Windows Authentication Role Service”](#) on page 104
- ♦ [“Creating and Managing Vibe Resources with IIS Manager”](#) on page 104

Installing the Vibe IIS Plug-In

- 1 Locate the `teaming-version-iis-plugin.zip` file from the Vibe distribution, then unzip it into the `C:\Program Files\Novell` directory.

This creates a directory called Vibe IIS Plugin.

- 2 If in [Step 1](#) you chose to unzip the `teaming-version-iis-plugin.zip` file into the `C:\Program Files\Novell` directory, continue with [Step 3](#).

or

If in [Step 1](#) you chose to unzip the `teaming-version-iis-plugin.zip` file into a location other than `C:\Program Files\Novell`, you must complete the following steps:

- 2a Locate the `isapi_redirect.properties` file in each of the following directories:

- ♦ `Vibe IIS Plugin\resources1\bin`
- ♦ `Vibe IIS Plugin\resources2\bin`

- 2b In each of the directories, open the `isapi_redirect.properties` file in a text editor.

- 2c Adjust the values of the `log_file`, `worker_file` and `worker_mount_file` properties to reflect the directory where you chose to unzip the `teaming-version-iis-plugin.zip` file.

- 2d Save your changes and close both of the `isapi_redirect.properties` files.

- 3 If IIS and the Vibe server are located on the same server, continue with [Step 4](#).

or

If IIS and the Vibe server are located on separate servers, complete the following steps:

- 3a Locate the `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\conf\workers.properties` file.
 - 3b Open the `workers.properties` file in a text editor.
 - 3c Adjust the value of the `worker.worker1.host` property from `localhost` to the hostname or IP address of the Vibe server.
 - 3d Save your changes and close the editor.
- 4 (Conditional) If you are running IIS on a 64-bit server, complete the following steps:
- 4a Locate the `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\library\win64` directory.
 - 4b Copy the appropriate version of the `.dll` library and paste it into each of the following directories:
 - ♦ `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\resources1\bin`
 - ♦ `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\resources2\bin`
- Ensure that you copy the correct version of the `.dll` library. If you copy the incorrect version, you receive a 500 error when you try to access the Vibe site.
- 4c Delete the existing `isapi_redirect.dll` files from the `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\resources1\bin` directory, as well as from the `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\resources2\bin` directory.
 - 4d Rename the `.dll` library files that you copied in [Step 4b](#) to `isapi_redirect.dll`.
For example, if Vibe is running on an AMD64/EM64T platform, copy `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\library\win64\amd64\isapi_redirect-version.dll` into the `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\resources1\bin` and `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\resources2\bin` directories, then delete the original `isapi_redirect.dll` file and rename `isapi_redirect-version.dll` to `isapi_redirect.dll`.

Installing IIS Manager

If Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager is not already installed on your server, you need to download and install it. You also need to install the CGI and ISAPI components.

- 1 Install the IIS 7 Administration Pack:
 - 1a Navigate to [Microsoft IIS Download Site \(http://www.iis.net/download/Manage\)](http://www.iis.net/download/Manage).
 - 1b Click the *Manage* tab.
 - 1c Under *Administration Pack*, click *Install*.
 - 1d (Conditional) If you have not yet installed the Microsoft Web Platform, click *Get the Microsoft Web Platform* to download the `.exe` file, install the Microsoft Web Platform, then click *Finish your installation*.
The Launch Application dialog box is displayed.
 - 1e Select *Web Platform Installer*, then click *OK*.
The Web Platform Installer 2.0 dialog box is displayed.
 - 1f Click *Install* to install the Administration Pack, then accept the terms of the license agreement.

- 2 Install the ISAPI and CGI components:
 - 2a Launch the Web Platform Installer.
 - 2b From the Web Platform Installer, select *Web Platform*.
 - 2c Under *Web Server*, click *Customize*.
 - 2d In the *Application Development* section, select *CGI*, *ISAPI Extensions*, and *ISAPI Filters*.
 - 2e Click *Install*, then accept the terms of the license agreement.
 - 2f Click *Finish* after the components have been installed successfully.

Installing Windows Authentication Role Service

If the Windows Authentication Role Service is not already installed, you need to install it.

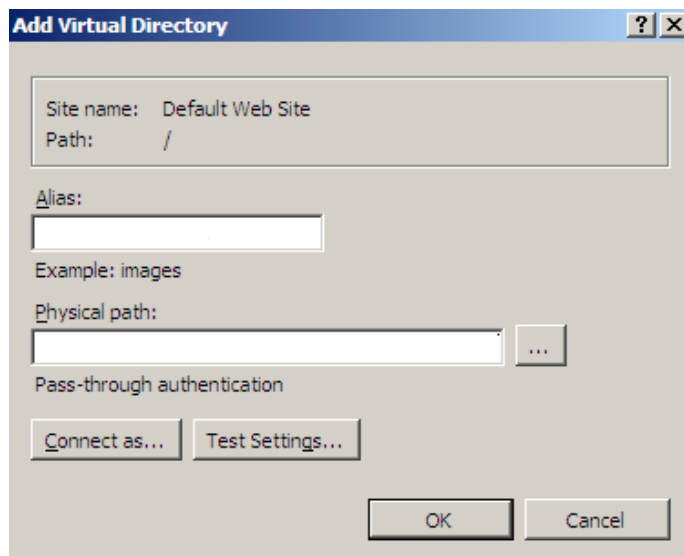
- 1 On the Windows 2008 server, click *Start > Administrative Tools > Server Manager*.
- 2 Expand *Roles*, then right-click *Web Server (IIS)*.
- 3 Click *Add Role Services*.

The Add Role Services window is displayed.
- 4 Scroll to the *Security* section, then select *Windows Authentication*.
- 5 Click *Next*, then complete the installation.

Creating and Managing Vibe Resources with IIS Manager

- 1 Click *Start > Administrative Tools > Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager*.
- 2 In the *Connections* pane on the left side of the window, expand your server, then expand *Sites*.
- 3 Right-click *Default Web Site*, then click *Add Virtual Directory*.

The Add Virtual Directory dialog box is displayed.



- 4 In the dialog box, specify the following information:
 - Alias:** VibeResources1
 - Physical path:** C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\Resources1\bin

5 Click **OK**.

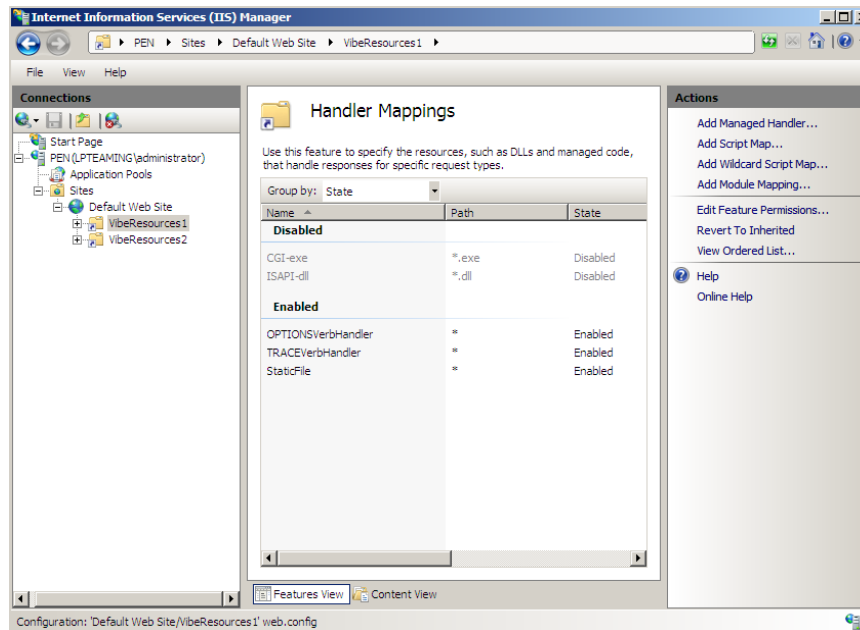
6 Repeat [Step 3](#) through [Step 5](#) to add another virtual directory.

This time, specify the following information in the Add Virtual Directory dialog box:

Alias: VibeResources2

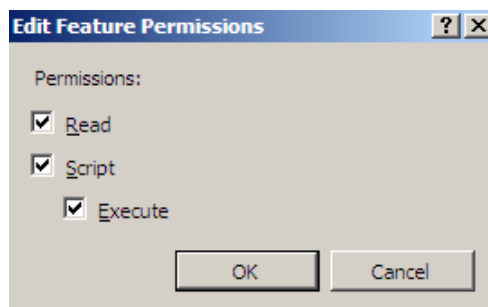
Physical path: C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\Resources2\bin

7 In the *Connections* panel, select *VibeResources1*, then double-click *Handler Mappings*.



8 In the *Actions* pane, click *Edit Feature Permissions*.

The Edit Feature Permissions dialog box is displayed.



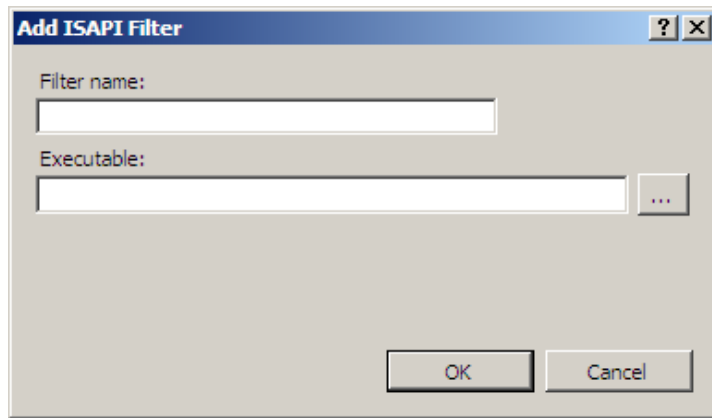
9 Select *Execute*, then click **OK**.

10 Repeat [Step 4](#) through [Step 9](#) for the *VibeResources2* virtual directory.

11 In the *Connections* pane, select *Default Web Site*, then double-click *ISAPI Filters*.

12 In the *Actions* panel, click *Add*.

The Add ISAPI Filter dialog box is displayed.



- 13 In the dialog box, specify the following information:

Filter name: VibeResources1

You must name the filter VibeResources1 for Windows Authentication to work successfully.

Executable: C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS
Plugin\Resources1\bin\isapi_redirect.dll

- 14 Click OK.

- 15 Repeat [Step 12](#) through [Step 14](#) to add another ISAPI filter.

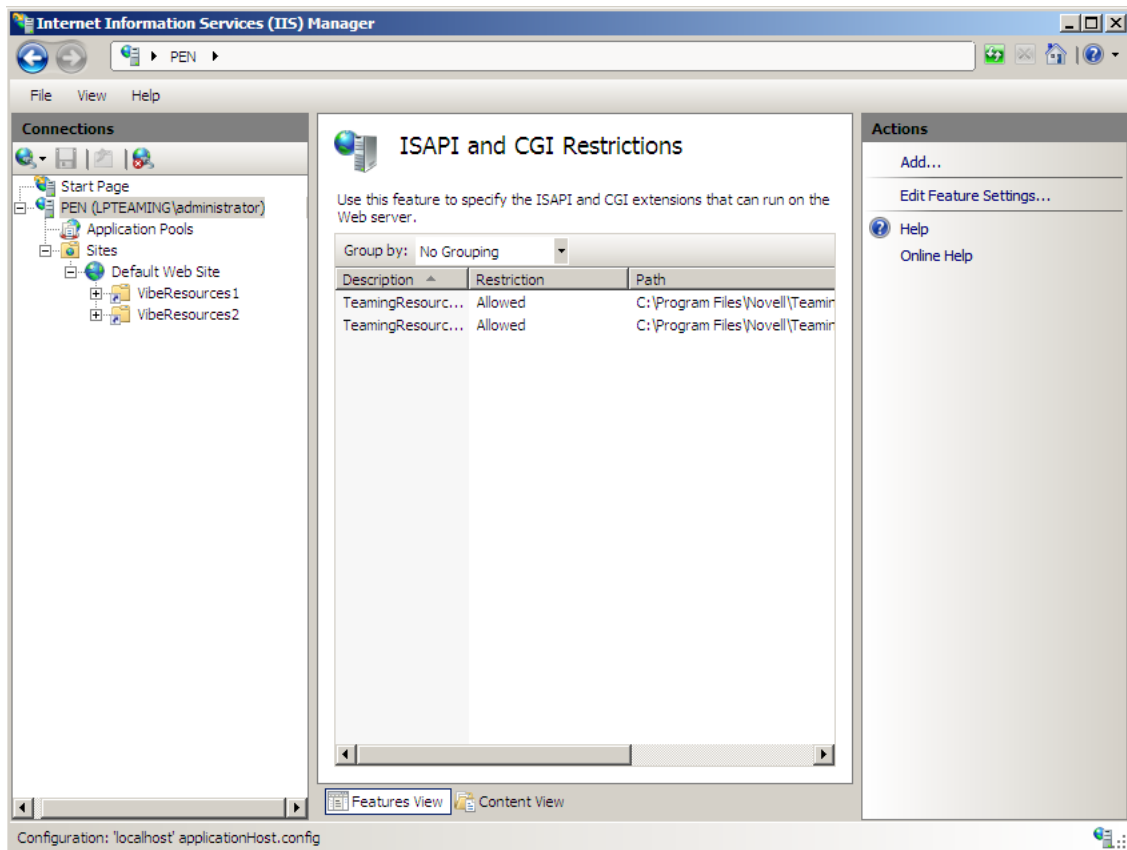
This time, specify the following information in the Add ISAPI Filter dialog box:

Filter name: VibeResources2

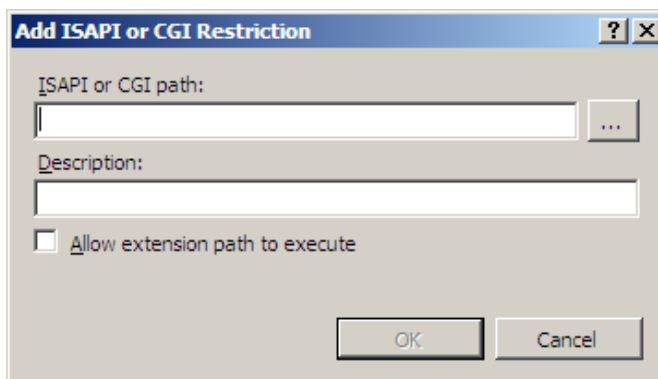
You must name the filter VibeResources2 in order for Windows Authentication to work successfully.

Executable: C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS
Plugin\Resources2\bin\isapi_redirect.dll

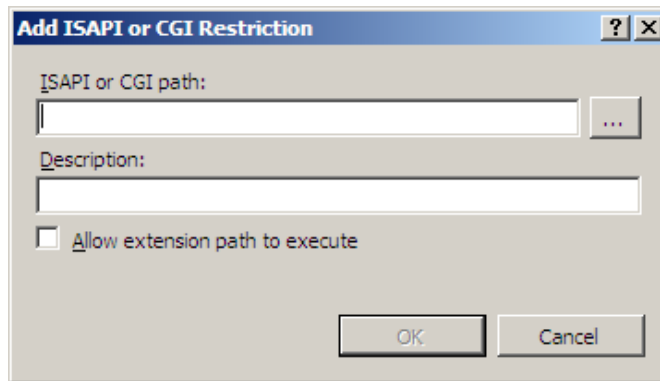
- 16 In the *Connections* pane, select the server, then double-click *ISAPI and CGI Restrictions*.



- 17 In the *Actions* pane, click *Add*.
The Add ISAPI or CGI Restriction dialog box is displayed.



- 18 In the dialog box, specify the following information:
ISAPI or CGI path: Specify C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\resources1\bin\isapi_redirect.dll
Description: VibeResources1
Allow extension path to execute: Select this option to allow the path to execute.
- 19 In the *Actions* pane, click *Add*.
The Add ISAPI or CGI Restriction dialog box is displayed.



20 In the dialog box, specify the following information:

ISAPI or CGI path: Specify `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\resources2\bin\isapi_redirect.dll`

Description: `VibeResources2`

Allow extension path to execute: Select this option to allow the path to execute.

21 In the *Connections* pane, select *VibeResources1*, then double-click *Authentication*.

22 Select *Anonymous Authentication*, then click *Disable* in the *Actions* panel.

23 Select *Windows Authentication*, then click *Enable* in the *Actions* panel.

24 Exit the Internet Information Services Manager.

25 Perform the Advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,”](#) on page 115.

10.10.4 Running the Vibe Installation Program

See [“Choosing Windows Authentication”](#) on page 48 for information about how to configure the Vibe installation program to support Windows Authentication, then follow the instructions for the advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,”](#) on page 115.

Return here and continue with [Section 10.10.5, “Configuring Your Browser to Allow Access to the Vibe Site,”](#) on page 108.

10.10.5 Configuring Your Browser to Allow Access to the Vibe Site

After Windows Authentication has been enabled on the server, you need to configure the client browser to allow access to the Vibe site.

- ♦ [“Internet Explorer”](#) on page 108
- ♦ [“Firefox”](#) on page 109

Internet Explorer

- 1 In an Internet Explorer window, click *Tools > Internet Options*.
The Internet Options dialog box is displayed.
- 2 Click the *Security* tab, select *Local intranet*, then click *Sites*.
The Local Intranet dialog box is displayed.
- 3 Click *Advanced*.

- 4 In the *Add this website to the zone* field, specify the Vibe website.
- 5 Click *Add > Close*.

Firefox

- 1 In Firefox, specify `about:config` in the URL field.
- 2 Specify `ntlm` in the *Filter* window, then locate and select the *network.automatic-ntlm-auth.trusted-uris* entry.
The Enter String Value dialog box is displayed.
- 3 Specify the DNS name of your Vibe site, then click *OK*.
For example, *vibe.mycompany.com*.
- 4 Repeat [Step 2](#) through [Step 3](#) for *network.negotiate-auth.trusted-uris* and *network.negotiate-auth.delegation-uris*.

10.10.6 Bypassing Windows Authentication to Configure LDAP and Perform Other Tasks

After Windows Authentication is working on your Vibe server, you can bypass the Windows Authentication functionality by including the Vibe listening port in the Vibe URL.

You need to do this in order to configure your LDAP directory.

- 1 In a web browser, specify your Vibe URL with the Vibe listening port.
For example, `http://vibe:8080`.
The Vibe login page is displayed.



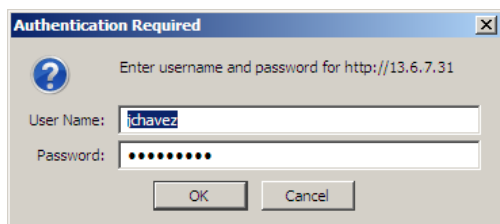
- 2 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 3 Configure LDAP, as described in [Section 6.3, “Adding Vibe Users from Your LDAP Directory,” on page 78](#).

You might also need to bypass Windows Authentication to access Vibe for the following reasons:

- ♦ To access a specific Vibe node in a clustered environment
- ♦ To troubleshoot the Vibe system

10.10.7 Logging In to the Vibe Site through Windows Authentication

After you have performed the configuration steps described in [Section 10.10.3, “Configuring the Vibe Server to Support Windows Authentication,”](#) on page 102 through [Section 10.10.5, “Configuring Your Browser to Allow Access to the Vibe Site,”](#) on page 108, users can access the Vibe site through Windows Authentication. Users who have been configured through LDAP and are already logged in to their individual workstations do not need to log in again to access the Vibe site. Users who are not already logged in before they access Vibe see the following dialog box:



10.10.8 Editing Files through WebDAV with Windows Authentication

- ♦ [“Achieving Single Sign-On When Editing Files through WebDAV”](#) on page 110
- ♦ [“Enabling Basic Authentication for WebDAV”](#) on page 110

Achieving Single Sign-On When Editing Files through WebDAV

By default, when you edit a file in Vibe through WebDAV, you are prompted for your system login credentials before you can edit the file. However, when Windows Authentication is enabled on your Vibe server, you are no longer prompted for your system login credentials before you edit a file through WebDAV.

This functionality is supported only when you use Microsoft Office as your default document editor. When you use OpenOffice 3.1 or later as your default document editor, Vibe allows you to edit files through WebDAV, but it still requires you to enter your system login credentials. The single sign-on experience is only available when you use Microsoft Office.

Enabling Basic Authentication for WebDAV

If you are using OpenOffice 3.0 or earlier, or any other document editor that requires basic authentication (it does not support Windows Authentication), you need to configure your IIS server to support basic authentication. Supporting basic authentication enables Vibe users to edit files through WebDAV when using a document editor other than Microsoft Office or OpenOffice 3.1 or later.

NOTE: If you enable basic authentication on your IIS server, all users who access the Vibe site through Firefox are prompted for their login credentials. Single sign-on to the Vibe server no longer functions. However, users who access the Vibe site using Internet Explorer retain the single sign-on experience.

To enable basic authentication on your IIS server, you need to install the Basic Authentication Role Service.

- 1 On the Windows 2008 server, click *Start > Administrative Tools > Server Manager*.
- 2 Expand *Roles*, then right-click *Web Server (IIS)*.

- 3 Click *Add Role Services*.
The Add Role Services window is displayed.
- 4 Scroll to the *Security* section, then select *Basic Authentication*.
- 5 Click *Next*, then complete the installation.
- 6 Click *Start > Administrative Tools > Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager*.
- 7 In the *Connections* pane on the left side of the window, expand your server, expand *Sites*, then expand *Default Web Site*.
- 8 Select *VibeResources1*, then double-click *Authentication*.
- 9 Select *Basic Authentication*, then click *Enable* in the *Actions* panel.
- 10 Close the Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager.

10.10.9 Configuring IIS to Allow Uploading of Large Files to the Vibe Site

By default, IIS might not allow you to upload large files to the Vibe site. This is caused by timeout restrictions as well as maximum upload size restrictions.

For information about how to configure IIS to allow you to upload large files, see article 925083 in the [Microsoft Support Knowledgebase \(http://support.microsoft.com/kb/925083\)](http://support.microsoft.com/kb/925083).

10.10.10 Configuring IIS to Load Balance in a Clustered Environment

If you have Vibe installed in a clustered environment where there are multiple Vibe nodes, you can configure IIS to balance the load of user requests from the multiple Vibe nodes, while still supporting Windows Authentication.

- 1 On the IIS server, locate the `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\conf\workers.properties.clustered.template` file, then open the file in a text editor.
- 2 Copy the contents of the file.
- 3 Locate the `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\conf\workers.properties` file, then open the file in a text editor.
- 4 Paste the contents of the `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\conf\workers.properties.clustered.template` file that you copied in [Step 2](#) and into the `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\conf\workers.properties` file, overwriting the content that was previously there.
- 5 Replace the value of `worker.worker1.host` from `first_hostname_or_ip` with the hostname or IP address of your first Vibe node.
- 6 Repeat [Step 5](#) for each additional Vibe node that is running in your environment. If you have more than two Vibe nodes, you should add an additional section to the `workers.properties` file for each additional node.

The values that you specify in the `workers.properties` file (for example, `worker1`, `worker2`, etc.) must exactly match the values that you specify as the JVM Route setting during the Vibe installation, as described in [Section 16.2, “Installing the Vibe Software on Multiple Servers,” on page 136](#).

- 7 Locate the `C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\resources1\conf\uriworkermapping.properties` file, then open the file in a text editor.
- 8 Replace all instances of `worker1` with `balancer`.

- 9 Repeat [Step 7](#) and [Step 8](#) for each Vibe node.
- 10 Locate the C:\Program Files\Novell\Vibe IIS Plugin\Resources2\conf\uriworkermap.properties file, then open the file in a text editor.
- 11 Replace all instances of `worker1` with `balancer`.
- 12 Repeat [Step 10](#) and [Step 11](#) for each Vibe node.
- 13 Restart each Vibe node.
- 14 Restart the IIS server:
 - 14a Click *Start > Administrative Tools > Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager*.
 - 14b Select your server in the *Connections* panel, then click *Restart* in the *Actions* panel.

10.11 Configuring Mirrored Folder Resource Drivers

A mirrored folder is a directory, either local or shared on a SAN (storage area network), that is directly accessible from the Novell Vibe site. The files on the file system are accessed by the Novell Vibe program through a resource driver, not directly by individual Vibe users. A resource driver defines how the Vibe program accesses the file system.

During installation, you define the users and groups that can access the mirrored folder resource drivers. After installation, from the Vibe site, you associate resource drivers with specific Vibe folders and use folder access controls to govern which users and groups can access the data in the mirrored folder. As a result, you can set up a small number of users who can create mirrored folders, and allow a larger number of users to access the mirrored folders.

Vibe attempts to keep the metadata about each mirrored folder synchronized with the contents of the actual file system. Therefore, mirrored folders are most appropriate for large sets of relatively static data. Mirrored folders are also useful for making extremely large files available from your Vibe site without including them in the Vibe file repository.

Although the installation program allows you to set up three mirrored folder resource drivers during installation, you can set up and test just one to start with, and then set up additional resource drivers later.

- ♦ [Section 10.11.1, “File System Type,” on page 112](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.11.2, “File System Directory,” on page 113](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.11.3, “File System Access,” on page 113](#)
- ♦ [Section 10.11.4, “Mirrored Folder Setup,” on page 114](#)

After planning mirrored folders, complete the planning process for additional Advanced installation features as needed, then perform the Advanced installation as described in [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,” on page 115](#).

10.11.1 File System Type

Vibe provides resource drivers for two different types of file systems:

- ♦ **file:** A directory in a regular file system on a Linux or Windows server.
- ♦ **webdav:** A directory on a web server that supports WebDAV (Web-based Distributed Authoring and Versioning). The WebDAV server must support [HTTP Basic Authentication](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Basic_access_authentication) (http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Basic_access_authentication) so that Vibe can provide a user name and a password when making a request from the WebDAV server.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Mirrored Folder Resource Driver Configuration*, mark the type of directory that you want to mirror in your Vibe site.

10.11.2 File System Directory

The file system that a Vibe mirrored folder uses can be on Linux, NetWare, or Windows, as long as the following conditions are met:

- ♦ The file system is accessible from the Vibe server by using a directory path specification that the Vibe server operating system understands.
- ♦ The file system is accessible through the standard `java.io` package interface.

IMPORTANT: On Windows, you must use forward slashes (/) in the path name, not the typical Windows backslashes (\). For example, use `c:/Documents` rather than `c:\Documents`.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Mirrored Folder Resource Driver Configuration*, specify the full path for the directory that you want to mirror in your Vibe site. Also, provide a title for the mirrored folder resource driver that indicates what directory or data is being mirrored. For WebDAV mirrored folders, you must also specify the URL of the WebDAV host where the data is located.

If you need to eventually set up more than three directories as mirrored folders in your Vibe site, you can edit the `installer.xml` file in the directory where you run the Installation program.

10.11.3 File System Access

Vibe offers several security options for controlling access to the data that resides on the file system.

- ♦ You can restrict the Vibe program to read-only access to the mirrored data, or you can allow full read/write access.
- ♦ You can list specific Vibe users who are allowed to access the mirrored folder resource drivers and thereby create mirrored folders.
- ♦ You can list specific Vibe groups whose members are allowed to access the mirrored folder resource drivers and thereby create mirrored folders.
- ♦ For WebDAV mirrored folder resource drivers, you must also specify a user name and password that the Vibe program can use to access the WebDAV server.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Mirrored Folder Resource Driver Configuration*, list the file access (read/write or read-only) for the mirrored data, along with users and groups that you want to have access to the resource driver. For a WebDAV mirrored folder, list a user name and password that provides access to the WebDAV server.

10.11.4 Mirrored Folder Setup

After you run the Vibe Installation program to configure the Vibe site for mirrored folder resource drivers, additional folder setup is required. Follow the instructions in [“Setting Up Mirrored Folders”](#) in [“Site Setup”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

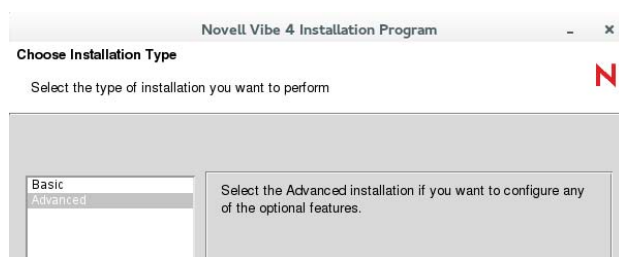
10.12 Installing the Vibe Software in a Clustered Environment

You must use an Advanced installation in order to install the Novell Vibe software on multiple servers and set up a clustered environment. Setting up multiple Vibe servers, along with other clustering options, are described in [Chapter 16, “Running Vibe on Multiple Servers,”](#) on page 135.

11 Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation

You should already have reviewed [Chapter 4, “Planning a Basic Vibe Installation,”](#) on page 39 and filled out the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#). You should also have reviewed [Chapter 10, “Planning an Advanced Vibe Installation,”](#) on page 91 and filled out the [Advanced Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) for those aspects of an Advanced installation that you want to implement for your Novell Vibe site.

- 1 Follow the Basic installation instructions provided in [Chapter 5, “Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site,”](#) on page 59 for the platform where you are installing Vibe.
- 2 When you run the installation program, select *Advanced* on the Choose Installation Type page.



- 3 Use the information that you have gathered on the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) and the [Advanced Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) to provide the information that the Vibe Installation program prompts you for:

Basic Installation Pages:

[Installation Locations](#)
[Location of TrueType Fonts for Stellant Converters](#)
[Default Locale for Novell Vibe](#)
[User ID for Novell Vibe \(Linux only\)](#)
[Network Information](#)
[WebDAV Authentication Method](#)
[Database Selection](#)
[Java JDK Location](#)
[Outbound Email Configuration](#)
[Inbound Email Configuration](#)

Some Basic installation pages have additional options available when you perform an Advanced installation.

Advanced Installation Pages:

[Web Services](#)
[Lucene Configuration](#)
[RSS Configuration](#)
[Presence Configuration](#)
[Reverse Proxy Configuration](#)

[Integration with IIS for Windows Authentication](#)
[Mirrored Folder Resource Driver Configuration](#)
[Vibe Cluster Configuration](#)

The Installation program stores the information it gathers in the `installer.xml` file in the same directory where you started the Installation program.

- 4 After you have provided all the requested information, click *Install* to begin the Advanced installation.
- 5 When the installation is complete, click *Finish* to exit the Vibe installation program.

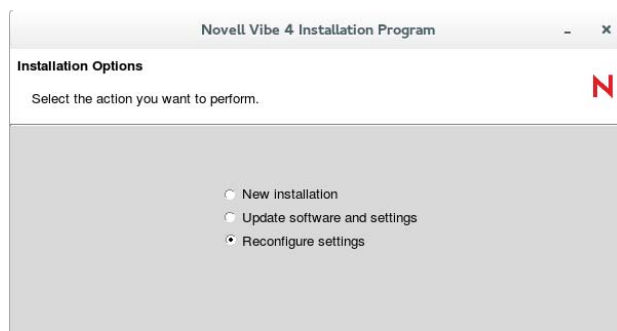
Information about the installation process is written to the `installer.log` file in the same directory where you ran the Installation program. If a problem occurs during the installation, the `installer.log` file provides information that can help you resolve the problem.

- 6 After you complete the Advanced installation, continue setting up your Vibe site, as described in [Chapter 6, "Adding Users to Your Vibe Site," on page 77](#).

12 Setting Configuration Options after Installation

After you install Novell Vibe, following the instructions in [Part II, “Basic Installation,” on page 37](#) or [Part III, “Advanced Installation and Reconfiguration,” on page 89](#), you can rerun the Vibe installation program to change configuration options or add new functionality to your Vibe site.

- 1 Stop Vibe.
- 2 Start the Vibe installation program as described in [Section 5.1.2, “Running the Linux Vibe Installation Program,” on page 60](#) and [Section 5.2.2, “Running the Windows Vibe Installation Program,” on page 70](#).

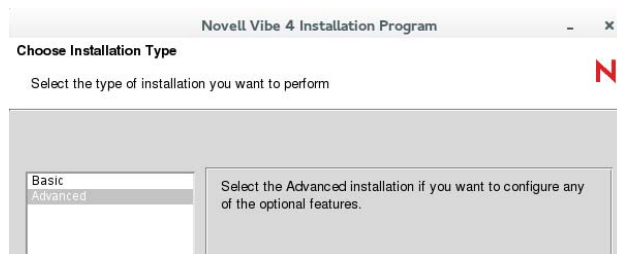


Because the Installation program finds an existing `installer.xml` file, it defaults to *Reconfigure settings*.

- 3 Click *Next*.

The Vibe Installation program asks you to verify that you have stopped Vibe.

- 4 Click *Yes*.



- 5 Select *Basic* or *Advanced*, depending on the configuration settings that you want to change, then click *Next*.
- 6 Click *Next* until you reach an installation page where you want to reconfigure settings.

Basic Installation Pages:

[Installation Locations](#)

[Location of TrueType Fonts for Stellent Converters](#)

[Default Locale for Novell Vibe](#)

[User ID for Novell Vibe \(Linux only\)](#)

[Network Information](#)
[WebDAV Authentication Method](#)
[Database Selection](#)
[Java JDK Location](#)
[Outbound Email Configuration](#)
[Inbound Email Configuration](#)

Advanced Installation Pages:

[Web Services](#)
[Lucene Configuration](#)
[RSS Configuration](#)
[Presence Configuration](#)
[Reverse Proxy Configuration](#)
[Integration with IIS for Windows Authentication](#)
[Mirrored Folder Resource Driver Configuration](#)
[Vibe Cluster Configuration](#)

- 7 When you reach the Ready to Install page, click *Install* to implement the reconfigured settings.
- 8 Start Vibe.

13 Advanced Vibe Installation Summary Sheet

Installation Program Field	Value for Your Vibe Site	Explanation
Data Locations: Linux default: /var/opt/novell/teaming Windows default: c:\Novell\Teaming <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Simple file repository♦ Jackrabbit repository♦ Extensions repository♦ Cache store♦ Lucene index		See Section 10.2, “Distributing Different Data Types to Different Locations,” on page 92.
Network Information: <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Enable web services: No / Yes♦ Session timeout Default: 240 minutes♦ Enable Tomcat access log: No / Yes♦ Keystore file:		See Section 10.3, “Using Advanced Network Information Settings,” on page 93.
Network Information: <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Max Threads Default: 200♦ Max Active Default: 50♦ Max Idle Default: 20		See Section 10.4, “Configuring Requests and Connections Configuration,” on page 94.
WebDAV Authentication Method <ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ basic♦ digest		See Section 4.5, “Planning the WebDAV Authentication Method,” on page 46.

Installation Program Field	Value for Your Vibe Site	Explanation
Web Services:		See Section 10.5, “Configuring Web Services,” on page 95.
♦ Enable WSS authentication		
♦ Enable Basic authentication		
♦ Enable token-based authentication		
♦ Enable anonymous access		
Lucene Configuration:		See Section 10.6.2, “Changing Lucene Configuration Settings,” on page 96.
Configuration type: all		
♦ Max booleans:		
Default: 10000		
♦ Merge factor:		
10		
Server Lucene Configuration:		See Section 10.6.3, “Running the Lucene Index Server in Its Own JVM,” on page 96.
Configuration type: server only		
♦ Host:		
♦ RMI port:		
Default: 1199		
High Availability Lucene Configuration:		See Chapter 17, “Running Multiple Lucene Index Servers,” on page 143.
Configuration type: high availability only		
Number of high availability search nodes:		
♦ Service name:		
♦ Service title:		
♦ Host:		
♦ RMI port:		
♦ Service name:		
♦ Service title:		
♦ Host:		
♦ RMI port:		
RSS Configuration:		See Section 10.7, “Managing RSS Feeds,” on page 97.
Enable RSS: No / Yes		
♦ Max elapsed days:		
♦ Max inactive days:		

Installation Program Field	Value for Your Vibe Site	Explanation
Presence Configuration:		See Section 10.8, “Configuring Presence,” on page 98.
Enable presence: No / Yes		
<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Server address:♦ Port:♦ Server user:♦ Password:♦ Server Certificate:		
Reverse Proxy Configuration:		See Section 10.9, “Configuring Single Sign-On with Novell Access Manager,” on page 99.
Enable Access Gateway: No / Yes		
<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Access Gateway address(es):♦ Logout URL:♦ Use Access Gateway for WebDav connections: No / Yes<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ WebDAV Access Gateway address:		
Integration with IIS for Windows Authentication:		See Section 10.10, “Configuring Single Sign-On with Internet Information Services for Windows,” on page 99.
Enable Integration with IIS for Windows Authentication: No / Yes		
<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ IIS address(es):♦ Logout URL:		
Mirrored Folder Resource Driver Configuration:		See Section 10.11, “Configuring Mirrored Folder Resource Drivers,” on page 112.
Enable file share: No / Yes		
<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ Share type<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ File♦ WebDav♦ Read only: No / Yes♦ Title♦ Root path♦ Allowed users♦ Allowed groups♦ User♦ Password♦ Host URL		

IV Multi-Server Configurations and Clustering

- ♦ [Chapter 14, “Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server,” on page 125](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 15, “Installing the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server,” on page 131](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 16, “Running Vibe on Multiple Servers,” on page 135](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 17, “Running Multiple Lucene Index Servers,” on page 143](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 18, “Running Multiple Database Servers,” on page 161](#)

14 Creating the Vibe Database on a Remote Server

The default database location for Novell Vibe is on the same server with the Vibe software, as described in [Section 4.6.3, “Database Location,” on page 49](#). However, for better performance and scalability, you can install the database server (MySQL, Microsoft SQL, or Oracle) on a remote server, and then use the scripts that are included with the Vibe software to manually create the Vibe database in any location that you prefer.

- ♦ [Section 14.1, “Creating a MySQL Database,” on page 125](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.2, “Creating a Microsoft SQL Database,” on page 127](#)
- ♦ [Section 14.3, “Creating an Oracle Database,” on page 128](#)

NOTE: This section assumes that you already have a Basic installation of Vibe up and running successfully. We highly recommend that you follow the instructions in [Part II, “Basic Installation,” on page 37](#) before attempting a more complex Vibe configuration.

14.1 Creating a MySQL Database

Before you begin, you should be familiar with standard database maintenance procedures.

For more information about MySQL, see the following references:

- ♦ [MySQL 5.0 Reference Manual \(http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.0/en\)](http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.0/en)
- ♦ [MySQL 5.1 Reference Manual \(http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.1/en\)](http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.1/en)

The following database tools can be helpful:

- ♦ [MySQL GUI Tools \(http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/gui-tools\)](http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/gui-tools)
- ♦ [SQLyog \(http://www.webyog.com\)](http://www.webyog.com)
- ♦ [Squirrel SQL Client \(http://squirrel-sql.sourceforge.net\)](http://squirrel-sql.sourceforge.net)

To create the MySQL database:

- 1 Review the MySQL requirements listed in [Section 2.1, “Vibe Server Requirements,” on page 17](#).
- 2 Ensure that the MySQL database server and client have been installed and configured, as described in [Section A.3, “MySQL Database Server,” on page 206](#).
- 3 Ensure that the MySQL database client is also installed on the Vibe server.
The Vibe installation program needs the MySQL client in order to communicate with the remote MySQL database server.
- 4 Ensure that you know the password for the MySQL `root` administrator user.
- 5 Ensure that `innodb` support is enabled.

It is enabled by default. To verify that `innodb` support is enabled:

- 5a Enter the following command to access the MySQL monitor:

```
mysql -u root -p
```

For information on how to set a password for your MySQL database if you have not already done so, see [“Configuring MySQL” on page 207](#).

5b Specify your password.

5c From the MySQL prompt, enter the following command to display status information about the server’s storage engines:

```
SHOW ENGINES\G
```

5d Locate the InnoDB engine, and ensure that `innodb` support is enabled.

6 Update the MySQL configuration file:

6a Locate the MySQL configuration file and open it in a text editor.

Linux: `/etc/my.cnf`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\MySQL\MySQL Server version\my.ini`

6b Under the `[client]` section, add the following line:

```
default_character_set = utf8
```

6c Under the `[mysqld]` section, add the following line:

```
character_set_server = utf8
```

Setting the character set to UTF-8 ensures that extended characters are handled correctly in the database.

6d (Conditional) For a system with multiple network interfaces, in the `[mysqld]` section, add the following line:

```
bind-address = mysql_server_address
```

Replace *mysql_server_address* with the IP address that you want MySQL to bind to and to listen on.

6e Save the updated configuration file, then exit the text editor.

7 Copy the `teaming-4.0.n-db.zip` file from the Vibe server where the Vibe installation program is located and copy it to the database server.

or

Download and unzip the Vibe software onto the database server.

8 In the directory where the Vibe Installation program is located on the database server, or in the location where you copied the `teaming-4.0.n-db.zip` file, unzip the `teaming-4.0.n-db.zip` file.

9 Change to the `db` subdirectory.

10 Change to the `db/scripts/sql` subdirectory.

11 Copy the `mysql-create-empty-database.sql` script to a convenient temporary location on the server where you want to create the database, and ensure that your database management utility is on your path so that you can run it from that directory.

12 Specify the following command to run the MySQL database creation script:

```
mysql -uuser -ppassword < mysql-create-empty-database.sql
```

13 Configure MySQL to allow access from a remote server:

```
mysql -uuser -ppassword
mysql> grant all privileges on *.*
      -> to 'username'@'%'
      -> identified by 'password'
      -> with grant option
      -> ;
```

- 14 Edit the `mysql-liquibase.properties` file to use your specific credentials.

For example:

```
vi mysql-liquibase.properties
```

- 15 Populate the database that you just created:

```
./manage-database.sh mysql updateDatabase
```

- 16 Verify that the database tables were created:

```
mysql -uuser -p
```

- 17 Specify the password for the MySQL user.

- 18 Specify the following command to use the default Vibe database:

```
mysql> use sitescape;
```

A message indicating that the database has been changed is displayed.

- 19 Specify the following command to show that the tables were created:

```
mysql> show tables;
```

14.2 Creating a Microsoft SQL Database

Before you begin, you should be familiar with standard database maintenance procedures.

For more information about Microsoft SQL, see the following references:

- ♦ [Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Learning Resources](http://www.microsoft.com/sqlserver/2008/en-us/learning.aspx) (<http://www.microsoft.com/sqlserver/2008/en-us/learning.aspx>)
- ♦ [Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Learning Resources](http://www.microsoft.com/sqlserver/2005/en-us/learning-resources.aspx) (<http://www.microsoft.com/sqlserver/2005/en-us/learning-resources.aspx>)

The following database tool can be helpful:

- ♦ [Squirrel SQL Client](http://squirrel-sql.sourceforge.net) (<http://squirrel-sql.sourceforge.net>)

To create a Microsoft SQL database:

- 1 Review the Microsoft SQL requirements listed in [Section 2.1, “Vibe Server Requirements,” on page 17](#).
- 2 Ensure that the Microsoft SQL Server and Client have been installed and configured properly.

IMPORTANT: Ensure that TCP/IP is enabled for the Microsoft SQL Server.

For more information, see “[Microsoft SQL Server](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb545450.aspx)” (<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb545450.aspx>).

- 3 Ensure that the Microsoft SQL database client is also installed on the Vibe server.
The Vibe installation program needs the Microsoft SQL client in order to communicate with the remote Microsoft SQL database server.
- 4 When you install Microsoft SQL Server, select *SQL Server and Windows* for authentication.
The default is *Windows Only*, which is not appropriate for Vibe.

- 5 Copy the `teaming-4.0.n-db.zip` file from the Vibe server where the Vibe installation program is located and copy it to the database server.
or
Download and unzip the Vibe software onto the database server.
- 6 In the directory where the Vibe Installation program is located on the database server, or in the location where you copied the `teaming-4.0.n-db.zip` file, unzip the `teaming-4.0.n-db.zip` file.
- 7 Change to the `db` subdirectory.
- 8 Change to the `db/scripts/sql` subdirectory.
- 9 Use Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio to create the empty database:
 - 9a Copy the `sqlserver-create-empty-database.sql` file from the `db/scripts/sql` subdirectory .
 - 9b Execute the query to create the empty database.
When the database is created, you should see `Command(s) completed successfully` in the messages window.
- 10 Edit the `sqlserver-liquibase.properties` file to use your administrator user name and password for the SQL database server.
- 11 Populate the database that you just created:
`run manage-database.bat sqlserver updateDatabase`
- 12 Verify that the database tables were created by using Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio.

14.3 Creating an Oracle Database

Before you begin, you should be familiar with standard database maintenance procedures.

For more information about your Oracle database, see the following references:

- ♦ [Oracle Product Documentation \(http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/indexes/documentation/\)](http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/indexes/documentation/)
- ♦ [Oracle SQL Plus Documentation \(http://download.oracle.com/docs/cd/B19306_01/server.102/b14357/toc.htm\)](http://download.oracle.com/docs/cd/B19306_01/server.102/b14357/toc.htm)

The following database tool can be helpful:

- ♦ [Squirrel SQL Client \(http://squirrel-sql.sourceforge.net\)](http://squirrel-sql.sourceforge.net)
- 1 Review the Oracle database requirements listed in [Section 2.1, “Vibe Server Requirements,”](#) on [page 17](#).
 - 2 Ensure that the Oracle database server software has been installed and configured properly.
For more information, see [Oracle Database \(http://www.oracle.com/database\)](http://www.oracle.com/database).
 - 3 Set up the Oracle database character set to support Unicode character encodings.
Vibe requires either the UTF-8 or AL32UTF8 character set for proper operation. Oracle recommends AL32UTF8, because it has increased support for certain Asian languages. For more information, see “[Choosing a Character Set](http://download.oracle.com/docs/cd/B19306_01/server.102/b14225/ch2charset.htm)” (http://download.oracle.com/docs/cd/B19306_01/server.102/b14225/ch2charset.htm) in the *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide*.
 - 4 Copy the `teaming-4.0.n-db.zip` file from the Vibe server where the Vibe installation program is located and copy it to the database server.
or

Download and unzip the Vibe software onto the database server.

- 5 In the directory where the Vibe Installation program is located on the database server, or in the location where you copied the `teaming-4.0.n-db.zip` file, unzip the `teaming-4.0.n-db.zip` file.
- 6 Change to the `db` subdirectory.
- 7 Change to the `db/scripts/sql` subdirectory.
- 8 Edit the `oracle-create-empty-database.sql` script with your Oracle database password.

Original:

```
drop user sitescape cascade;
create user sitescape identified by sitescape;
grant connect, resource to sitescape;
connect sitescape/sitescape;
```

(SiteScape is the name of the company that previously developed the Vibe software.)

Updated:

```
drop user sitescape cascade;
create user sitescape identified by your_oracle_password;
grant connect, resource to sitescape;
connect sitescape/your_oracle_password;
```

IMPORTANT: Unless you are very familiar with editing scripts, change only the password. Do not attempt to change the name of the database from the legacy default of `sitescape`.

- 9 Enter the following commands to run the database creation script:

```
sqlplus "/ as sysdba"
SQL> spool oracle-create-empty-database.out;
SQL> @oracle-create-empty-database;
SQL> quit
```

- 10 Check the resulting `oracle-create-empty-database.out` file for errors and resolve them.
- 11 Edit the `oracle-liquibase.properties` file to use your administrator user name and password.

For example:

```
vi oracle-liquibase.properties
```

- 12 Populate the database that you just created:

```
run ./manage-database.sh oracle updateDatabase
```

- 13 Verify that the database tables were created.

15 Installing the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server

You can install the Lucene Index Server on a different server from where Novell Vibe is running. If the Lucene Index Server is already running on the same server as Vibe, you can move the Lucene Index Server to a different server.

Running the Lucene Index Server on a remote server allows both the Lucene Index Server and the Vibe server to have access to more server memory, disk space, and CPU resources.

Complete the following sections whether you are installing the Lucene Index Server on a remote server, or moving the Lucene Index Server to a remote server.

IMPORTANT: The Vibe server and the Lucene Index Server must not have a firewall between them. The RMI protocol used for the Lucene Index Server port works only within a trusted local area network (LAN).

- ♦ [Section 15.1, “Installing the Lucene Software,” on page 131](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.2, “Updating Your Vibe Site,” on page 133](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.3, “Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server,” on page 133](#)

NOTE: This section assumes that you already have a Basic installation of Vibe up and running successfully. We highly recommend that you follow the instructions in [Part II, “Basic Installation,” on page 37](#) before attempting a more complex Vibe configuration.

15.1 Installing the Lucene Software

- 1 Ensure that the Java Developer Kit (JDK) is installed on the remote server where you want to install the Lucene Index Server.

You must use the same JDK that is being used on the server where Vibe is running. For example, if you are using the IBM JDK on the server where Vibe is running, you must use the IBM JDK on the remote Lucene Index Server.

For instructions, see [Appendix A, “Vibe System Requirements Assistance,” on page 203](#).

- 2 Ensure that there is no firewall between the Vibe server and the Lucene Index Server.
- 3 Copy the Lucene installation program from its original location in the same directory with the Vibe installation program to a convenient temporary directory on the remote server.

The file name for the Lucene Installation program varies by platform:

Linux: `lucene-installer.linux`

Windows: `lucene-installer.exe`

- 4 Change to the directory where you copied the Lucene installation program, then start it.
- 5 Accept the License Agreement, then click *Next*.

- 6 Select *New installation*, then click *Next*.
- 7 Browse to and select the directory where you want to install the Lucene Index Server, then click *Next*.

The default location varies by platform:

Linux: /opt/novell/teaming/luceneserver

Windows: c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\luceneserver

- 8 Browse to and select the directory where you installed the JDK, then click *Next*.
- 9 Adjust the configuration of the Lucene Index Server, as described in [Section 10.6, “Changing Your Lucene Index Server Configuration,” on page 95](#), then click *Next*.
- 10 Click *Install* to install the Lucene software.
- 11 (Conditional) On Linux, deselect *Start Lucene server*.
You must edit the Lucene Index Server startup script before you start the Lucene Index Server. Instructions are provided later in this procedure.
- 12 (Conditional) On Windows, if you do not want to start the Lucene Index Server immediately, deselect *Start Lucene server*.
For instructions on starting and stopping the Lucene Index Server manually, see [Section 15.3, “Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server,” on page 133](#).
- 13 Click *Finish*.
- 14 (Conditional) On Linux:

- 14a Change to the following directory:

```
/opt/novell/teaming/luceneserver/indexserver/bin
```

- 14b Open the `indexserver-startup.sh` file in a text editor.

- 14c Add the following switch to the `java` launch command at the end of the script:

```
-Djava.rmi.server.hostname=ip_address
```

Rename *ip_address* with the IP address of the server where you installed the Lucene Index Server.

- 14d Save the `indexserver-startup.sh` file, then exit the text editor.

- 14e Start the Lucene Index Server.

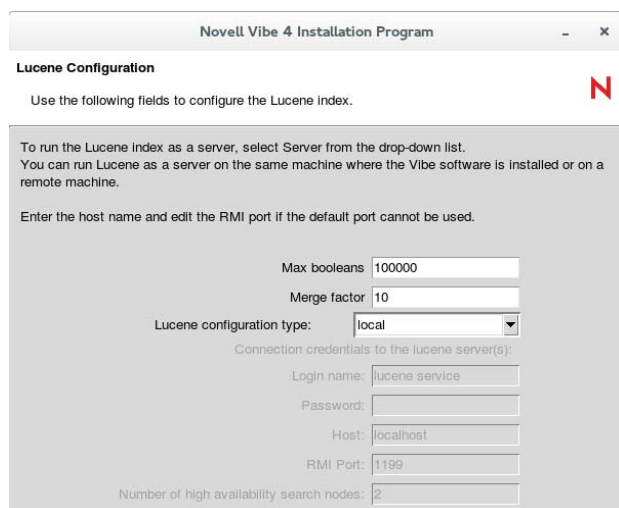
For instructions on starting and stopping the Lucene Index Server manually, see [Section 15.3, “Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server,” on page 133](#).

Moving the Lucene Index Server from the Vibe server to a remote server increases the scalability of your Vibe system, because the workload is distributed between two different physical servers. However, in this configuration, the Lucene Index Server still runs on a single server. Your Vibe site depends on the Lucene Index Server for full functionality. If that server goes down for some reason, the Vibe site becomes inaccessible until access to the Lucene Index Server is restored. You can further expand your Vibe system by setting up multiple Lucene Index Servers to provide high availability, as described in [Chapter 17, “Running Multiple Lucene Index Servers,” on page 143](#).

15.2 Updating Your Vibe Site

Complete this section only if you are moving the Lucene Index Server. If you are performing a fresh Lucene Index Server installation, disregard this section.

- 1 Stop Novell Vibe.
- 2 Start the Vibe installation program to reconfigure the Lucene Index Server settings.
For information on how to start the installation program, see [Section 5.1.2, “Running the Linux Vibe Installation Program,” on page 60](#) or [Section 5.2.2, “Running the Windows Vibe Installation Program,” on page 70](#).
- 3 On the Choose Installation Type page, select *Advanced*, then click *Next*.
- 4 Click *Next* until you reach the Lucene Configuration page.



The screenshot shows the 'Novell Vibe 4 Installation Program' window with the 'Lucene Configuration' tab selected. The window contains instructions and configuration fields for the Lucene Index Server. The fields are as follows:

Field	Value
Max booleans	100000
Merge factor	10
Lucene configuration type	local
Connection credentials to the lucene server(s):	
Login name	lucene service
Password	
Host	localhost
RMI Port	1199
Number of high availability search nodes	2

- 5 In the *Lucene configuration type* field, select *server* to activate additional fields.
Host: Specify the hostname of the server where you installed the Lucene Index Server software.
RMI Port: Use the same port number that you used when you installed the Lucene Index Server software. The default RMI port is 1199.
- 6 Click *Next* until you reach the Ready to Install page, then click *Install*.
- 7 When the installation is complete, click *Finish*.
- 8 Start Vibe.

15.3 Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server

- ♦ [Section 15.3.1, “Linux: Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server,” on page 133](#)
- ♦ [Section 15.3.2, “Windows: Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server,” on page 134](#)

15.3.1 Linux: Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server

Use the following commands to start and stop the Lucene index server manually:

```
/etc/init.d/indexserver start  
/etc/init.d/indexserver stop
```

To configure the Lucene Index Server to start automatically when the Linux server reboots, use:

```
chkconfig --add indexserver
```

15.3.2 Windows: Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server

Use the following commands at a DOS command prompt to start and stop the Lucene index server manually:

```
c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\luceneserver\indexserver\bin\  
indexserver-startup.bat
```

```
c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\luceneserver\indexserver\bin\  
indexserver-shutdown.bat
```

To configure the Lucene Index Server to start automatically when the Windows server reboots, you can set it up as a scheduled task that runs at system startup.

- 1 On the Windows server where the Lucene Index Server is installed, click *Start > All Programs > Accessories > System Tools > Scheduled Tasks*.
- 2 Double-click *Add Scheduled Task* to open the Scheduled Task Wizard, then click *Next* to continue.
- 3 Click *Browse*, then browse to and double-click the `indexserver-startup.bat` file in the following directory:

```
c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\luceneserver\indexserver\bin
```

- 4 In the *Task name* field, specify an informative name for the task, such as Lucene Index Server. The default task name is the name of the batch file.
- 5 In the *Perform this task* field, select *When my computer starts*, then click *Next*.
- 6 Specify and confirm the Administrator password for the Windows server, then click *Next*.
- 7 Select *Open advanced properties for this task when I click Finish*, then click *Finish*.
- 8 Verify that *Run only if logged on* is deselected, then click *OK*.

A new task with the name you specified in [Step 4](#) is added to the list in the Scheduled Tasks window.

- 9 Click *File > Exit* to close the Scheduled Task Wizard.

16 Running Vibe on Multiple Servers

By running Novell Vibe on multiple servers, you can achieve high availability, including failover and load balancing, depending on how you configure your servers. You must perform an Advanced installation on each server in order to configure the Vibe software for such a clustered environment.

- ♦ [Section 16.1, “Planning a Multi-Server Vibe Configuration,” on page 135](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.2, “Installing the Vibe Software on Multiple Servers,” on page 136](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.3, “Configuring a Web Application to Provide High Availability Functionality for Your Vibe Site,” on page 139](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.4, “Configuring Internet Information Services to Support Multiple Vibe Servers,” on page 141](#)

NOTE: This section assumes that you already have a Basic installation of Vibe up and running successfully. We highly recommended that you follow the instructions in [Part II, “Basic Installation,” on page 37](#) before attempting a more complex Vibe configuration.

16.1 Planning a Multi-Server Vibe Configuration

- ♦ [Section 16.1.1, “Lucene Index Server Considerations,” on page 135](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.1.2, “Vibe File Repository Considerations,” on page 135](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.1.3, “Configuring Routing for Multicast IP on the Vibe Server,” on page 136](#)

16.1.1 Lucene Index Server Considerations

Before you can implement a multi-server Novell Vibe configuration, you must move your Lucene Index Server away from the initial Vibe server, as described in [Chapter 15, “Installing the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server,” on page 131](#).

16.1.2 Vibe File Repository Considerations

Before you implement a multi-server Novell Vibe configuration, you must plan the Vibe file repository for the clustered Vibe servers. Your configuration must comply with the following restrictions:

- ♦ The Vibe file repository must be placed in a shared location that is accessible to each Tomcat instance.
- ♦ All Tomcat instances must be configured with the same path leading to the shared storage.

For background information on the contents of the Vibe file repository, see [Section 10.2, “Distributing Different Data Types to Different Locations,” on page 92](#).

16.1.3 Configuring Routing for Multicast IP on the Vibe Server

If you are planning to use ehcache as your hibernate caching provider, you might need to set up the routing for multicast IP on each server where Vibe is installed. If this is not done, then depending on your Vibe system, you might see a communication error when you start the Vibe server. For example, in the log file you might see the following:

```
Error starting heartbeat. Error was: No such device.
```

To prevent this error, or to fix the Vibe system after the error occurs:

- 1 Run the following command:

```
route add -net 232.0.0.0/8 dev eth0
```

16.2 Installing the Vibe Software on Multiple Servers

- 1 Update your existing Novell Vibe server to participate in a multi-server configuration:

- 1a Stop Vibe.

- 1b Start the Vibe Installation program.

For information on how to start the installation program, see [Section 5.1.2, “Running the Linux Vibe Installation Program,” on page 60](#) or [Section 5.2.2, “Running the Windows Vibe Installation Program,” on page 70](#).

- 1c On the Installation Settings page, select *Reconfigure Settings*, then click *Next*.

- 1d On the Choose Installation Type page, select *Advanced*, then click *Next*.

- 1e Click *Next* to proceed through the installation pages where no changes are needed.

- 1f (Conditional) If you do not have the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) and [Advanced Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) from the initial Vibe server installation, record the configuration of the initial Vibe server as you proceed through the installation pages.

Subsequent Vibe servers in the multi-server configuration must be installed with the same configuration settings as the initial Vibe server.

- 1g On the Vibe Cluster Configuration page, select *Enable clustered environment* to enable clustering.

- 1h On the first Vibe node, in the *JVM Route* field, specify `worker1`. On the second Vibe node, in the *JVM Route* field, specify `worker2`, and so forth for each Vibe node, incrementing the JVM Route setting. Each Tomcat instance should have a unique JVM Route setting.

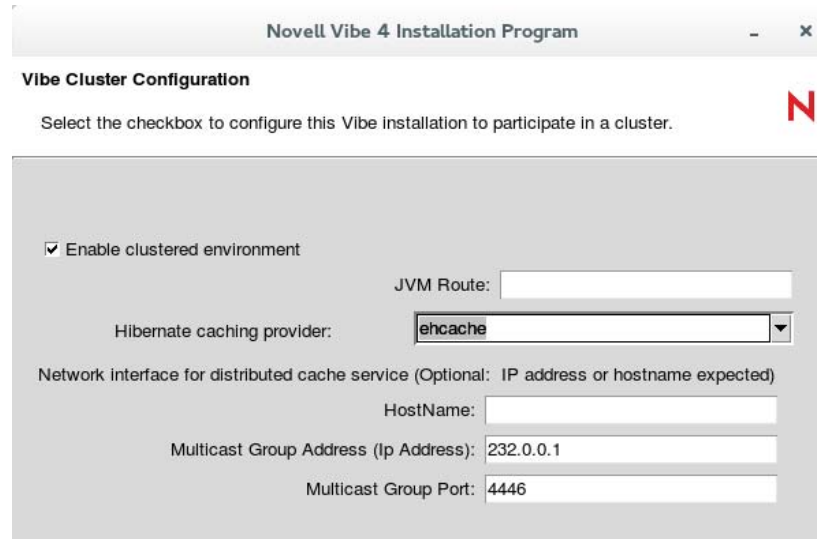
`worker1`, `worker2`, and so forth are the default names for the matching values used for the reverse proxy configuration. For example, if you have set up Apache or IIS as a reverse proxy, these are the default values. The *JVM Route* setting in the Vibe installer must match these values.

- 1i Select one of the following options for your hibernate caching provider:

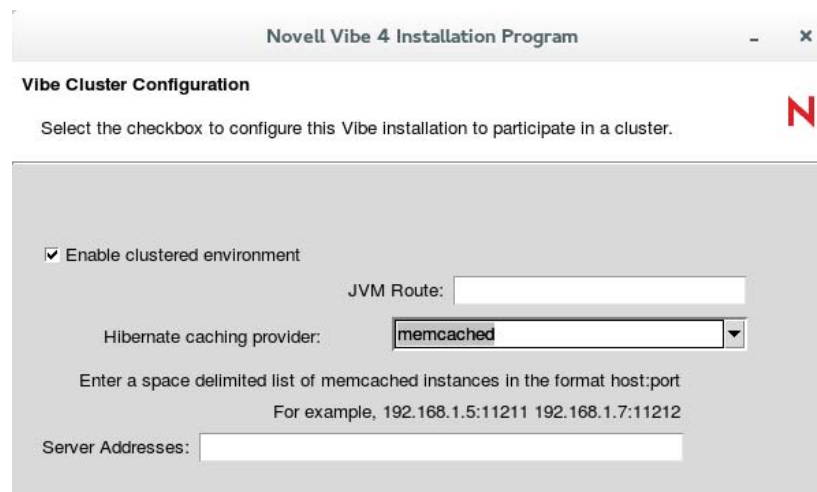
ehcache: Ehcache is recommended for small clustered Vibe sites, and is included in the Vibe software. If you select this option, no further configuration is necessary. For more information, see [Ehcache \(http://ehcache.sourceforge.net\)](http://ehcache.sourceforge.net).

memcached: Memcached is recommended for medium to large clustered Vibe sites. Memcached is not included in the Vibe software. If you select this option, you must download and install memcached on each server that you plan to use for caching in your Vibe cluster. For information about downloading and installing memcached, see [Appendix B, “Memcached Caching with Novell Vibe,” on page 209](#).

Depending on the cache provider you select, different options are displayed.



The screenshot shows the 'Novell Vibe 4 Installation Program' window with the 'Vibe Cluster Configuration' tab selected. A red 'N' logo is in the top right corner. Below the title bar, it says 'Select the checkbox to configure this Vibe installation to participate in a cluster.' The 'Enable clustered environment' checkbox is checked. The 'JVM Route' field is empty. The 'Hibernate caching provider' dropdown is set to 'ehcache'. Below this, the 'Network interface for distributed cache service (Optional: IP address or hostname expected)' section contains a 'HostName' field (empty), a 'Multicast Group Address (Ip Address)' field with '232.0.0.1', and a 'Multicast Group Port' field with '4446'.



The screenshot shows the same 'Novell Vibe 4 Installation Program' window, but the 'Hibernate caching provider' dropdown is now set to 'memcached'. The 'JVM Route' field remains empty. Below the provider dropdown, there is a text instruction: 'Enter a space delimited list of memcached instances in the format host:port. For example, 192.168.1.5:11211 192.168.1.7:11212'. The 'Server Addresses' field is empty.

- 1j (Conditional) If you selected *ehcache* as the hibernate caching provider in [Step 1g](#), specify the following information on the Vibe Cluster Configuration page to configure ehcache:

Network interface for distributed cache service: Specify the IP address or hostname of the distributed cache service.

Multicast Group Address: (Optional) Specify the common multicast group IP address. Each clustered node recognizes other nodes in the cluster by means of this IP address.

IMPORTANT: Ensure you specify the same IP address on all Vibe nodes in the cluster. After you have set this IP address for each Vibe node, restart each node in succession, allowing each node to initialize before restarting the next.

The default multicast group IP address is 232.0.0.1. If you have more than one clustered Vibe system (for example, one in the lab and one in production), or if you have another software product that is already using the default multicast group IP address, you must update this field for one system so that it uses an IP address other than the default.

Use an IP address in the range of 224.0.0.1 to 239.255.255.255.

Multicast Group Port: (Optional) Specify the port number through which the Vibe nodes will communicate.

- 1k** (Conditional) If you selected *memcached* as the hibernate caching provider in [Step 1g](#), specify the following information on the Vibe Cluster Configuration page to configure memcached:

Server Addresses: Specify a list of memcached servers, with each server separated by a space. For example, *hostname1:port hostname2:port hostname3:port*

The server addresses listed here are all nodes within the Vibe cluster. Changes made to one Vibe node are immediately visible in other Vibe nodes. Ensure that the clock settings for each Vibe node are synchronized. Failure to do so can significantly degrade overall system performance.

Memcached is not included in the Vibe software. If you select memcached as your hibernate caching provider, you must download and install memcached on each server in your Vibe cluster. For information about downloading and installing memcached, see [Appendix B, “Memcached Caching with Novell Vibe,” on page 209](#).

- 1l** On the Ready to Install page, click *Install*.

- 1m** On the Installation Complete page, click *Finish*.

- 2** Install the Vibe software on each additional server, using the same installation settings that you used for the initial Vibe server.
- 3** (Conditional) If you set up ehcache as the caching provider, on each Linux server where you installed the Vibe software, set the multicast route to enable the servers to function as a cluster:

- 3a** Use the following command on the command line to immediately set the multicast route for the server:

```
route add -net 232.0.0.0/8 dev eth0
```

- 3b** To run this command each time the server reboots, add the command to the following file on each server:

```
/etc/init.d/boot.local
```

- 4** Start Vibe on each server, as described for the platform where you are installing Vibe:
- ♦ [“Starting Vibe on Linux” on page 67](#)
 - ♦ [“Running Vibe as a Windows Service” on page 73](#)
 - ♦ [“Running Vibe as a Windows Application” on page 74](#)
- 5** (Conditional) If you set up ehcache as the caching provider and the Vibe servers fail to start because of a communication error, ensure that you have followed the steps in [Section 16.1.3, “Configuring Routing for Multicast IP on the Vibe Server,” on page 136](#).
- 6** Continue with [Configuring a Web Application to Provide High Availability Functionality for Your Vibe Site](#).

16.3 Configuring a Web Application to Provide High Availability Functionality for Your Vibe Site

After Novell Vibe is installed and running on multiple servers, you must provide additional software to provide high availability functionality. Because Vibe is based on Tomcat, you can use software that provides high availability for Tomcat.

- 1 Install and configure one of the following web applications to provide high availability for your Vibe site:
 - ♦ [Apache web server \(http://www.apache.org\)](http://www.apache.org)
 - ♦ [Linux Virtual Server \(http://www.linuxvirtualserver.org\)](http://www.linuxvirtualserver.org)
 - ♦ [Novell Access Manager \(https://www.netiq.com/products/access-manager/\)](https://www.netiq.com/products/access-manager/)
 - ♦ [Microsoft Internet Information Services \(http://www.iis.net\)](http://www.iis.net)
- 2 Configure the web application to establish the Vibe site URL, which then stays constant for Vibe users regardless of which Vibe server they access at any given time.
- 3 Start the web application with its new configuration settings.
- 4 Test your Vibe site for high availability.
 - ♦ If you are using Apache web server, Linux Virtual Services, or Microsoft Internet Information Services, users can immediately log in to the Vibe site again after a failover has occurred. The connection between the user's browser and the Vibe site is maintained as the failover occurs.
 - ♦ If you are using Novell Access Manager, users must start a new browser session, and then log in to the Vibe site after a failover has occurred. They cannot log in again from the same browser session, because the connection between the user's browser and the Vibe site must be reestablished after the failover.

The following sections provide examples of how to configure the web applications:

- ♦ [Section 16.3.1, "Configuring Apache as a Load Balancer," on page 139](#)
- ♦ [Section 16.3.2, "Configuring Linux Virtual Server as a Load Balancer," on page 141](#)

16.3.1 Configuring Apache as a Load Balancer

The following example configuration uses the balancer module built into the newer Apache (version 2.2.4 and later) web server. It is based on a widely used sticky session technique. Novell Vibe does not support session sharing/replication among Tomcat instances.

If you are using Novell Access Manager as described in [Section 10.9, "Configuring Single Sign-On with Novell Access Manager," on page 99](#), you do not need to configure Apache to load balance as described in this section, because Access Manager provides this service.

NOTE: When you update your Vibe system, these settings are not preserved. You must redefine these settings each time you update your Vibe system.

To configure Apache to load balance:

- 1 Install the [Apache web server \(http://httpd.apache.org\)](http://httpd.apache.org) on one server.
- 2 Edit the `/etc/sysconfig/apache2` file:
 - 2a Locate the following line:

```
APACHE_MODULES=
```

Then add the following lines:

```
proxy
proxy_ajp
proxy_balancer
```

The end result should look similar to the following:

```
APACHE_MODULES="actions alias auth_basic authn_file authz_host
authz_groupfile authz_default authz_user authn_dbm autoindex cgi dir env
expires include log_config mime negotiation setenvif ssl suexec userdir
php5 reqtimeout proxy proxy_ajp proxy_balancer"
```

2b Create the following new configuration file:

```
/etc/apache2/httpd.conf.vibe
```

2c Add the following section to the `/etc/apache2/httpd.conf.vibe` file, providing a `BalancerMember` line for each `jvmRoute` value in a `Tomcat server.xml` file.

```
<Location /balancer-manager>
    SetHandler balancer-manager
    Order deny,allow
    Deny from all
    Allow from 127.0.0.1
</Location>
<Proxy balancer://cluster_name>
    BalancerMember ajp://vibe_server_1:8009 route=worker1
    BalancerMember ajp://vibe_server_2:8009 route=worker2
</Proxy>
<Location />
    ProxyPass balancer://cluster_name/ stickysession=JSESSIONID
</Location>
```

The values that you specify for the `route` setting (for example, `worker1`, `worker2`, etc.) must exactly match the values that you specify as the JVM Route setting during the Vibe installation, as described in [Section 16.2, "Installing the Vibe Software on Multiple Servers," on page 136](#).

2d Save the `httpd.conf.vibe` file.

3 Reconfigure each Vibe server in the cluster so that each server has the same network information (hostname and ports) as the Apache web server.

For each Vibe server in the cluster:

3a Run the Vibe installation program by reconfiguring the Vibe server.

For information about how to reconfigure your Vibe server, see [Chapter 12, "Setting Configuration Options after Installation," on page 117](#).

3b On the *Network Information* page in the Vibe installation program, change the hostname in the *Host* field for each Vibe server. The hostname must match the DNS name that users use to access the Vibe service.

For example, if the URL for your Vibe site is `vibe.acme.com`, you would specify `vibe.acme.com` in this field.

3c Continue through the Vibe installation program for each Vibe server in the cluster, as described in [Chapter 12, "Setting Configuration Options after Installation," on page 117](#).

4 Restart Apache.

TIP: For enhanced performance when using the Internet Explorer browser to access a Vibe system that is using Apache as an SSL reverse-proxy server, change the Apache SSL exclusion regular expression configuration from the following:

```
SetEnvIf User-Agent ".*MSIE.*" \  
nokeepalive ssl-unclean-shutdown \  
downgrade-1.0 force-response-1.0
```

to the following:

```
SetEnvIf User-Agent ".*MSIE [1-5].*" \  
nokeepalive ssl-unclean-shutdown \  
downgrade-1.0 force-response-1.0
```

```
SetEnvIf User-Agent ".*MSIE [6-9].*" \  
ssl-unclean-shutdown
```

16.3.2 Configuring Linux Virtual Server as a Load Balancer

Consult the following online sources for instructions on setting up Linux Virtual Server as a load balancer for your Novell Vibe site:

- ♦ [The Linux Virtual Server Project \(http://www.linuxvirtualserver.org\)](http://www.linuxvirtualserver.org)
- ♦ [Linux Virtual Server \(LVS\) Project \(http://www.austintek.com/LVS\)](http://www.austintek.com/LVS)
- ♦ [Linux Virtual Server Tutorial \(http://www.ultramonkey.org/papers/lvs_tutorial/html\)](http://www.ultramonkey.org/papers/lvs_tutorial/html)

16.4 Configuring Internet Information Services to Support Multiple Vibe Servers

You can configure Internet Information Services (IIS) to support multiple Novell Vibe servers. For more information, see [Section 10.10.10, “Configuring IIS to Load Balance in a Clustered Environment,”](#) on page 111.

17 Running Multiple Lucene Index Servers

Your Novell Vibe site depends on the Lucene Index Server for full functionality. Different Lucene configurations provide different levels of scalability and reliability.

You can install the Lucene Index Server on a different server from where Vibe is running so that both programs have access to more server memory, disk space, and CPU resources. However, the Vibe server and the Lucene Index Server must not have a firewall between them. The RMI protocol used for the Lucene Index Server port works only within a trusted local area network (LAN).

- ♦ A Basic installation of Vibe places the Lucene Index Server on the same server where the Vibe software is installed.
- ♦ To provide additional memory for the Lucene Index Server, you might already have configured it to run in its own memory space, as described in [Section 10.6.3, “Running the Lucene Index Server in Its Own JVM,” on page 96](#).
- ♦ To provide additional disk space and memory for the Lucene Index Server, you might already have moved it to a different server, as described in [Chapter 15, “Installing the Lucene Index Server on a Remote Server,” on page 131](#).

These configurations provide additional resources for the Lucene Index Server, but it is still a single point of failure for your Vibe site. If the Lucene Index Server goes down, the Vibe site becomes inaccessible until access to the Lucene Index Server is restored.

Running multiple Lucene Index Servers provides high availability functionality, so that if one Lucene Index Server goes down, Vibe users can still access the Vibe site because other Lucene Index Servers are still available.

- ♦ [Section 17.1, “Planning a High Availability Lucene Configuration,” on page 143](#)
- ♦ [Section 17.2, “Setting Up a High Availability Lucene Configuration,” on page 144](#)
- ♦ [Section 17.3, “Testing Your Lucene High Availability Configuration,” on page 156](#)
- ♦ [Section 17.4, “Synchronizing a High Availability Lucene Configuration,” on page 158](#)

NOTE: This section assumes that you already have a Basic installation of Vibe up and running successfully. We highly recommend that you follow the instructions in [Part II, “Basic Installation,” on page 37](#) before attempting a more complex Vibe and Lucene configuration.

17.1 Planning a High Availability Lucene Configuration

A high availability Lucene Index Server configuration must include at least two different servers (either physical or virtual), referred to as “nodes” in the Vibe installation program. Lucene nodes in a high availability configuration can be set up on Linux servers, Windows servers, or both.

Each Lucene node must have its own independent directory structure for index files. The default location for the index files for the Lucene Index Server varies by platform:

Linux: `/var/opt/novell/teaming/lucene`

Windows: `c:\Novell\Teaming\lucene`

As you plan your high availability Lucene configuration, you can use the [Advanced Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) to record the options you want to use.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *High Availability Lucene Configuration*, specify the number of Lucene nodes that you want in your high availability Lucene configuration.

Each Lucene node needs a unique name, a descriptive title, and a static IP address. The name and title identify the node in the Vibe administrative interface. Typically, the Lucene Index Server listens on RMI port 1199 on its server, but you can configure it to use a different port number if the default port number is already in use.

ADVANCED VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *High Availability Lucene Configuration*, specify the name, description, IP address, and RMI port number for each Lucene node.

If you have already accumulated index data on your initial Vibe server, you can choose to copy the index files to the Lucene nodes, or you can reindex the Vibe site after the new Lucene nodes are running. Depending on the amount of accumulated index data, reindexing can be a time-consuming process.

The Vibe server and the Lucene nodes must not have a firewall between them. The RMI protocol used for the Lucene Index Server port works only within a trusted local area network (LAN).

17.2 Setting Up a High Availability Lucene Configuration

- [Section 17.2.1, “Changing from a Local Lucene Index Server,” on page 144](#)
- [Section 17.2.2, “Changing from a Single Remote Lucene Index Server,” on page 147](#)
- [Section 17.2.3, “Expanding an Existing High Availability Lucene Configuration,” on page 149](#)
- [Section 17.2.4, “Changing Your Lucene Configuration without Vibe Site Down Time,” on page 152](#)

17.2.1 Changing from a Local Lucene Index Server

To change from a local Lucene Index Server running on the Novell Vibe server, you must install the Lucene Index Server on two or more remote servers, and then reconfigure Vibe for a high availability Lucene configuration.

NOTE: Although it is possible to use the Lucene Index Server on the Vibe server as one of the “remote” Lucene nodes, this is not a recommended configuration. Consider it only if you are restricted to two servers for your Vibe site.

- 1 Set up two or more Lucene nodes:
 - 1a Install the Lucene Index Server on each node, as described in [Section 15.1, “Installing the Lucene Software,” on page 131](#).
 - 1b (Optional) Copy accumulated index data from the initial Lucene Index Server to each additional Lucene node.

The default location for the index files varies by platform:

Linux: /var/opt/novell/teaming/lucene

Windows: c:\Novell\Teaming\lucene

- 1c Start the Lucene Index Server on each Lucene node, as described in [Section 15.3](#), “[Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server](#),” on page 133.

2 Stop Vibe.

If you have installed the Vibe software on multiple servers, as described in [Chapter 16](#), “[Running Vibe on Multiple Servers](#),” on page 135, stop Vibe on all servers, or follow the instructions in [Section 17.2.4](#), “[Changing Your Lucene Configuration without Vibe Site Down Time](#),” on page 152.

- 3 Run the Vibe installation program to configure the Vibe server for multiple Lucene nodes:

3a On the Installation Settings page, select *Reconfigure Settings*, then click *Next*.

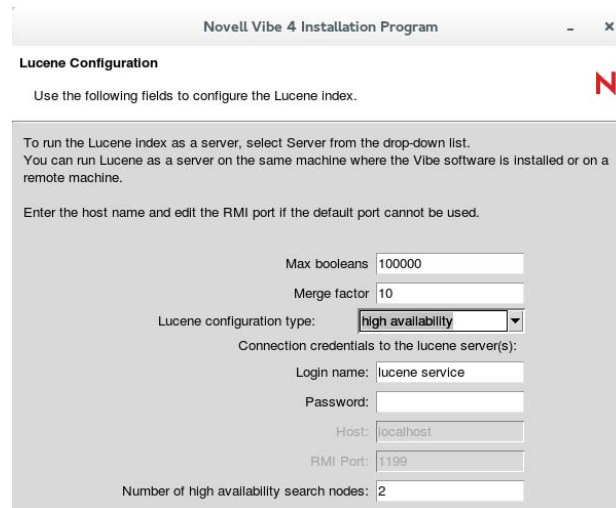
3b On the Choose Installation Type page, select *Advanced*, then click *Next*.

3c Click *Next* to proceed through the installation pages where no changes are needed.

3d On the Lucene Configuration page, fill in the following fields:

Lucene configuration type: Select *high availability*.

Number of high availability search nodes: Specify the number of Lucene nodes where you have installed and started the Lucene Index Server.



Novell Vibe 4 Installation Program

Lucene Configuration

Use the following fields to configure the Lucene index.

To run the Lucene index as a server, select *Server* from the drop-down list.
You can run Lucene as a server on the same machine where the Vibe software is installed or on a remote machine.

Enter the host name and edit the RMI port if the default port cannot be used.

Max booleans	100000
Merge factor	10
Lucene configuration type:	high availability
Connection credentials to the lucene server(s):	
Login name:	lucene service
Password:	
Host:	localhost
RMI Port:	1199
Number of high availability search nodes:	2

3e Click *Next*.

- 3f On the Configure High Availability Search Nodes page, specify the configuration information for each Lucene node from the [Advanced Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) that you filled out in [Section 17.1](#), “[Planning a High Availability Lucene Configuration](#),” on page 143, then click *Next*.

Novell Vibe 4 Installation Program

Configure High Availability Search Nodes

Configure the high availability search nodes specified in the previous panel.

Use the following fields to configure each high availability search node.

To remove one of the high available search nodes, unselect its "Keep" check box.

Enter the high availability service name, host name and edit the RMI Port if the default port cannot be used.

High Availability Search Node 1

☒ Keep Service name

Service title

Host

RMI port

High Availability Search Node 2


☒ Keep Service name

Service title

Host

RMI port

If you need more than 2 high availability search nodes, you will need to select "< Back" and increase the specified number of nodes.

- 3g Click *Next* until you reach the Ready to Install page, then click *Install*.
- 3h On the Installation Complete page, click *Finish*.
- 3i Start Vibe.
- 3j (Conditional) If you have multiple Vibe servers, repeat [Step 3](#) on each Vibe server.
- 4 Configure the Vibe site for the additional Lucene nodes:
 - 4a Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
 - 4b Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
 - 4c Under *Search Index*, click *Nodes*.

Lucene on Linux (lucenelinux)

Host: 172.16.5.2
RMI port: 1199

User Mode Access

☒ Read and Write
☐ Write Only
☐ No Access

☒ Enable Deferred Update Log

No Deferred Update Log Record Exists

Lucene on Windows (lucenewindows)

Host: 172.16.5.19
RMI port: 1199

User Mode Access

☐ Read and Write
☒ Write Only
☐ No Access

☒ Enable Deferred Update Log

No Deferred Update Log Record Exists

Apply Close

By default, the first Lucene node in the list has Read and Write access, meaning that Vibe updates it as new content is added to the Vibe site. By default, subsequent nodes in the list have Write Only access, meaning that the Vibe software can update content on the server, but users cannot access it. This setting is useful when you need to perform maintenance on a Lucene node, but it is not the setting you want when you set up a new Lucene node.

- 4d In the *User Mode Access* box, select *Read and Write* for all Lucene nodes, click *Apply*, then click *Close*.

The new setting is put into effect immediately, so that users immediately have access to the additional Lucene nodes.

- 5 Skip to [Section 17.3, “Testing Your Lucene High Availability Configuration,”](#) on page 156.

17.2.2 Changing from a Single Remote Lucene Index Server

To change from a single remote Lucene Index Server to a high availability configuration, you must install the Lucene Index Server on one or more additional remote servers, and then reconfigure Novell Vibe for additional Lucene nodes.

- 1 Bring down your Vibe site:

- 1a Stop Vibe.

If you have installed the Vibe software on multiple servers, as described in [Chapter 16, “Running Vibe on Multiple Servers,”](#) on page 135, stop Vibe on all servers, or follow the instructions in [Section 17.2.4, “Changing Your Lucene Configuration without Vibe Site Down Time,”](#) on page 152.

- 1b Ensure that the existing remote Lucene Index Server also stops.

- 2 Set up one or more additional Lucene nodes:

- 2a Install the Lucene Index Server on each additional remote server, as described in [Section 15.1, “Installing the Lucene Software,”](#) on page 131.

- 2b (Optional) Copy accumulated index data from the initial remote Lucene node to each additional Lucene node.

The default location for the index files varies by platform:

Linux: `/var/opt/novell/teaming/lucene`

Windows: `c:\Novell\Teaming\lucene`

- 2c Start the Lucene Index Server on each Lucene node, as described in [Section 15.3, “Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server,”](#) on page 133, but do not bring up your Vibe site.

- 3 Run the Vibe installation program to configure the Vibe server for multiple Lucene nodes:

- 3a On the Installation Settings page, select *Reconfigure Settings*, then click *Next*.

- 3b On the Choose Installation Type page, select *Advanced*, then click *Next*.

- 3c Click *Next* to proceed through the installation pages where no changes are needed.

- 3d On the Lucene Configuration page, fill in the following fields:

Lucene configuration type: Change *server* to *high availability*.

Number of high availability search nodes: Specify the number of Lucene nodes where you have installed the Lucene Index Server.

Novell Vibe 4 Installation Program

Lucene Configuration

Use the following fields to configure the Lucene index.

To run the Lucene index as a server, select Server from the drop-down list. You can run Lucene as a server on the same machine where the Vibe software is installed or on a remote machine. Enter the host name and edit the RMI port if the default port cannot be used.

Max booleans: 100000

Merge factor: 10

Lucene configuration type: **high availability**

Connection credentials to the lucene server(s):

Login name: lucene service

Password:

Host: localhost

RMI Port: 1199

Number of high availability search nodes: 2

3e Click *Next*.

3f On the Configure High Availability Search Nodes page, specify the configuration information for each Lucene node from the [Advanced Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) that you filled out in [Section 17.1, “Planning a High Availability Lucene Configuration,”](#) on page 143, then click *Next*.

Novell Vibe 4 Installation Program

Configure High Availability Search Nodes

Configure the high availability search nodes specified in the previous panel.

Use the following fields to configure each high availability search node. To remove one of the high available search nodes, unselect its “Keep” check box. Enter the high availability service name, host name and edit the RMI Port if the default port cannot be used.

High Availability Search Node 1

☒ Keep Service name: LuceneLinux

Service title: Lucene on Linux

Host: 172.16.5.2

RMI port: 1199

High Availability Search Node 2

☒ Keep Service name: Lucene Windows

Service title: Lucene on Windows

Host: 172.16.5.3

RMI port: 1199

If you need more than 2 high availability search nodes, you will need to select “< Back” and increase the specified number of nodes.

3g Click *Next* until you reach the Ready to Install page, then click *Install*.


3h On the Installation Complete page, click *Finish*.

3i Start Vibe.

3j (Conditional) If you have multiple Vibe servers, repeat [Step 3](#) on each Vibe server.

4 Configure the Vibe site for the additional Lucene nodes:

4a Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.

4b Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .

4c Under *Search Index*, click *Nodes*.

Lucene on Linux (lucenelinux)
Host: 172.16.5.2
RMI port: 1199

User Mode Access
☒ Read and Write
☐ Write Only
☐ No Access

☒ Enable Deferred Update Log

No Deferred Update Log Record Exists

Lucene on Windows (lucenewindows)
Host: 172.16.5.19
RMI port: 1199

User Mode Access
☐ Read and Write
☒ Write Only
☐ No Access

☒ Enable Deferred Update Log

No Deferred Update Log Record Exists

Apply Close

By default, the first Lucene node in the list has Read and Write access, meaning that Vibe updates it as new content is added to the Vibe site. By default, subsequent nodes in the list have Write Only access, meaning that the Vibe software can update content on the server, but users cannot access it. This setting is useful when you need to perform maintenance on a Lucene node, but it is not the setting you want when you set up a new Lucene node.

4d In the *User Mode Access* box, select *Read and Write* for all Lucene nodes.

4e Click *Apply*, then click *Close*.

The new setting is put into effect immediately, so that users immediately have access to the additional Lucene nodes.

5 Skip to [Section 17.3, “Testing Your Lucene High Availability Configuration,”](#) on page 156.

17.2.3 Expanding an Existing High Availability Lucene Configuration

After you have set up an initial high availability Lucene configuration, you can add additional Lucene nodes at any time.

1 Bring down your Vibe site:

1a Stop Vibe.

If you have installed the Vibe software on multiple servers, as described in [Chapter 16, “Running Vibe on Multiple Servers,”](#) on page 135, stop Vibe on all servers, or follow the instructions in [Section 17.2.4, “Changing Your Lucene Configuration without Vibe Site Down Time,”](#) on page 152.

1b Stop all Lucene nodes, as described in [Section 15.3, “Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server,”](#) on page 133.

2 Set up one or more additional Lucene nodes:

2a Install the Lucene Index Server on each additional remote server, as described in [Section 15.1, “Installing the Lucene Software,”](#) on page 131.

2b (Optional) Copy accumulated index data from an existing Lucene node to each additional Lucene node.

The default location for the index files varies by platform:

Linux: /var/opt/novell/teaming/lucene

Windows: c:\Novell\Teaming\lucene

- 2c** Start the Lucene Index Server on each Lucene node, as described in [Section 15.3](#), “[Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server](#),” on page 133, but do not bring up your Vibe site.
- 3** Run the Vibe installation program to configure the Vibe server for the additional Lucene nodes:
 - 3a** On the Installation Settings page, select *Reconfigure Settings*, then click *Next*.
 - 3b** On the Choose Installation Type page, select *Advanced*, then click *Next*.
 - 3c** Click *Next* to proceed through the installation pages where no changes are needed.
 - 3d** On the Lucene Configuration page, increase the number of nodes in the *Number of high availability search nodes* field, then click *Next*.

The screenshot shows the 'Novell Vibe 4 Installation Program' window with the 'Lucene Configuration' tab selected. The window has a title bar with standard Windows controls. The main content area has a red 'N' logo in the top right corner. Below the title, it says 'Use the following fields to configure the Lucene index.' and provides instructions: 'To run the Lucene index as a server, select Server from the drop-down list. You can run Lucene as a server on the same machine where the Vibe software is installed or on a remote machine. Enter the host name and edit the RMI port if the default port cannot be used.' The configuration fields are: 'Max booleans' (100000), 'Merge factor' (10), 'Lucene configuration type:' (dropdown menu showing 'high availability'), 'Connection credentials to the lucene server(s):' (Login name: 'lucene service', Password: empty field), 'Host:' (localhost), 'RMI Port:' (1199), and 'Number of high availability search nodes:' (2).

Max booleans	100000
Merge factor	10
Lucene configuration type:	high availability
Connection credentials to the lucene server(s):	
Login name:	lucene service
Password:	
Host:	localhost
RMI Port:	1199
Number of high availability search nodes:	2

- 3e** On the Configure High Availability Search Nodes page, specify the configuration information for each additional Lucene node, then click *Next*.

Novell Vibe 4 Installation Program

Configure High Availability Search Nodes

Configure the high availability search nodes specified in the previous panel.

Use the following fields to configure each high availability search node.

To remove one of the high available search nodes, unselect its "Keep" check box.

Enter the high availability service name, host name and edit the RMI Port if the default port cannot be used.

RMI port: 1199


High Availability Search Node 2

☒ Keep Service name: Lucene Windows
 Service title: Lucene on Windows
 Host: 172.16.5.3
 RMI port: 1199

High Availability Search Node 3

☒ Keep Service name:
 Service title:
 Host:
 RMI port: 1199

If you need more than 3 high availability search nodes, you will need to select "< Back" and increase the specified number of nodes.

- 3f Click *Next* until you reach the Ready to Install page, then click *Install*.
- 3g On the Installation Complete page, click *Finish*.
- 3h Start Vibe.
- 3i (Conditional) If you have multiple Vibe servers, repeat [Step 3](#) on each Vibe server.
- 4 Configure the Vibe site for the additional Lucene nodes:
 - 4a Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
 - 4b Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
 - 4c Under *Search Index*, click *Nodes*.

Lucene on Linux (lucenelinux)

Host: 172.16.5.2
RMI port: 1199

User Mode Access

☒ Read and Write
☐ Write Only
☐ No Access

☒ Enable Deferred Update Log

No Deferred Update Log Record Exists

Lucene on Windows (lucenewindows)

Host: 172.16.5.19
RMI port: 1199

User Mode Access

☐ Read and Write
☒ Write Only
☐ No Access

☒ Enable Deferred Update Log

No Deferred Update Log Record Exists

Apply Close

By default, the first Lucene node in the list has Read and Write access, meaning that Vibe updates it as new content is added to the Vibe site. By default, subsequent nodes in the list have Write Only access, meaning that the Vibe software can update content on the server, but users cannot access it. This setting is useful when you need to perform maintenance on a Lucene node, but it is not the setting you want when you set up a new Lucene node.

4d In the *User Mode Access* box, select *Read and Write* for all Lucene nodes.

4e Click *Apply*, then click *Close*.

The new setting is put into effect immediately, so that users immediately have access to the additional Lucene nodes.

5 Skip to [Section 17.3, “Testing Your Lucene High Availability Configuration,” on page 156](#).

17.2.4 Changing Your Lucene Configuration without Vibe Site Down Time

Vibe site down time can be avoided only if you have installed the Vibe software on multiple servers, as described in [Chapter 16, “Running Vibe on Multiple Servers,” on page 135](#).

To change to a high availability Lucene configuration in a multiple Vibe server configuration:

1 Set up two or more Lucene nodes:

1a Install the Lucene Index Server on each node, as described in [Section 15.1, “Installing the Lucene Software,” on page 131](#)

1b Start the Lucene Index Server on each Lucene node, as described in [Section 15.3, “Managing a Remote Lucene Index Server,” on page 133](#).

2 Stop Vibe on one server.

The other Vibe servers remain in service for users and continue to communicate with the original Lucene Index Server.

3 Run the Vibe installation program on the Vibe server that you stopped to configure it for multiple Lucene Index Servers:

3a On the Installation Settings page, select *Reconfigure Settings*, then click *Next*.

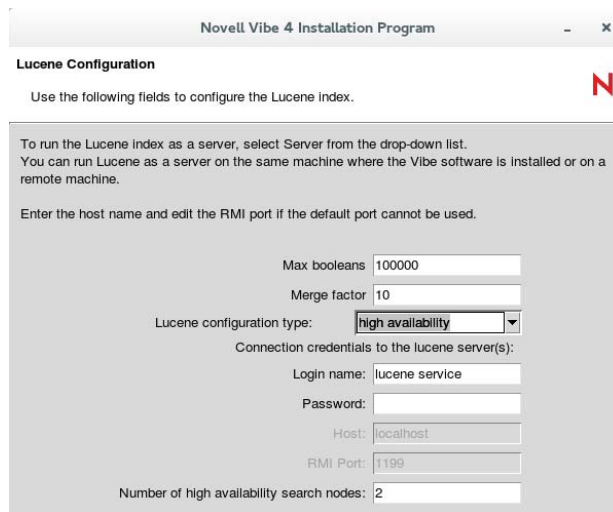
3b On the Choose Installation Type page, select *Advanced*, then click *Next*.

3c Click *Next* to proceed through the installation pages where no changes are needed.

3d On the Lucene Configuration page, fill in the following fields.

Lucene configuration type: Select *high availability*.

Number of high availability search nodes: Specify the number of Lucene nodes where you have installed the Lucene Index Server.



Novell Vibe 4 Installation Program

Lucene Configuration

Use the following fields to configure the Lucene index.

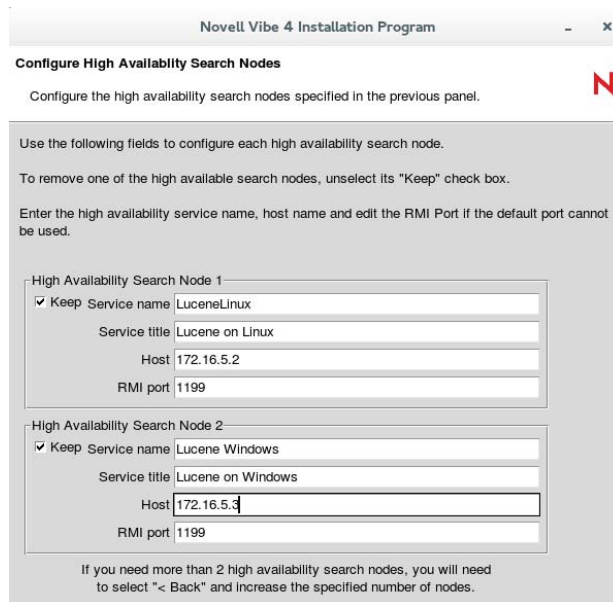
To run the Lucene index as a server, select Server from the drop-down list. You can run Lucene as a server on the same machine where the Vibe software is installed or on a remote machine.

Enter the host name and edit the RMI port if the default port cannot be used.

Max booleans: 100000
Merge factor: 10
Lucene configuration type: **high availability**
Connection credentials to the lucene server(s):
Login name: lucene service
Password:
Host: localhost
RMI Port: 1199
Number of high availability search nodes: 2

3e Click *Next*.

3f On the Configure High Availability Search Nodes page, specify the configuration information for each Lucene node from the [Advanced Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#) that you filled out in [Section 17.1, “Planning a High Availability Lucene Configuration,”](#) on page 143, then click *Next*.



Novell Vibe 4 Installation Program

Configure High Availability Search Nodes

Configure the high availability search nodes specified in the previous panel.

Use the following fields to configure each high availability search node.

To remove one of the high available search nodes, unselect its "Keep" check box.

Enter the high availability service name, host name and edit the RMI Port if the default port cannot be used.

High Availability Search Node 1
☒ Keep Service name: LuceneLinux
Service title: Lucene on Linux
Host: 172.16.5.2
RMI port: 1199

High Availability Search Node 2
☒ Keep Service name: Lucene Windows
Service title: Lucene on Windows
Host: 172.16.5.3
RMI port: 1199

If you need more than 2 high availability search nodes, you will need to select "< Back" and increase the specified number of nodes.


3g Click *Next* until you reach the Ready to Install page, then click *Install*.

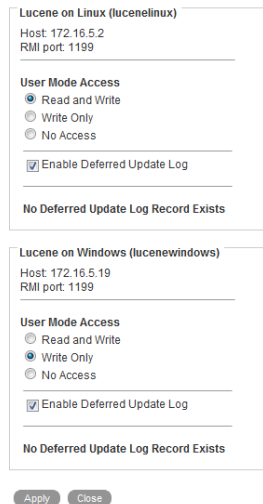
3h On the Installation Complete page, click *Finish*.

4 Start the reconfigured Vibe server.

5 Access the reconfigured Vibe server and prevent access to the additional Lucene nodes:

IMPORTANT: All Vibe servers must be reconfigured before any of them access the additional Lucene nodes.

- 5a Log in to the reconfigured Vibe server as the Vibe administrator, using the server hostname rather than your Vibe site URL.
- 5b Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
- 5c Under *Search Index*, click *Nodes*.



Lucene on Linux (lucenelinux)
Host: 172.16.5.2
RMI port: 1199

User Mode Access
☒ Read and Write
☐ Write Only
☐ No Access

☒ Enable Deferred Update Log

No Deferred Update Log Record Exists

Lucene on Windows (lucenewindows)
Host: 172.16.5.19
RMI port: 1199

User Mode Access
☐ Read and Write
☒ Write Only
☐ No Access


☒ Enable Deferred Update Log

No Deferred Update Log Record Exists

Apply Close

By default, the first Lucene node in the list has *Read and Write* access, meaning that Vibe updates it as new content is added to the Vibe site. By default, subsequent nodes in the list have *Write Only* access, meaning that the Vibe software can update content on the server, but users cannot access it. When you set up a high availability Lucene configuration without Vibe site down time, you need to prevent write access during the reconfiguration process.

- 5d In the *User Mode Access* box, change *Write Only* to *No Access* for the additional Lucene nodes.
- 5e Click *Apply*, then click *Close*.

The new setting is put into effect immediately, so that the reconfigured Vibe server does not communicate with the additional Lucene nodes.
- 6 Reconfigure the rest of the Vibe servers:
 - 6a Stop each Vibe server.
 - 6b Repeat [Step 3](#) to configure each Vibe server for the additional Lucene nodes.
 - 6c Start each reconfigured Vibe server.
- 7 Access the reconfigured Vibe site and allow write access to the additional Lucene nodes:
 - 7a Log in to the reconfigured Vibe as the Vibe administrator.
 - 7b Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
 - 7c Under *Search Index*, click *Nodes*.

Lucene on Linux (LuceneLinux)

Host: 172.16.5.19
RMI port: 1199

User Mode Access

☒ Read and Write
☐ Write Only
☐ No Access

☒ Enable Deferred Update Log

No Deferred Update Log Record Exists

Lucene on Windows (LuceneWindows)

Host: 137.65.67.222
RMI port: 1199

User Mode Access

☐ Read and Write
☐ Write Only
☒ No Access

☒ Enable Deferred Update Log

No Deferred Update Log Record Exists

Apply

Close

7d In the *User Mode Access* box, change *No Access* to *Write Only* for the additional Lucene nodes.

7e Click *Apply*, then click *Close*.

The new setting is put into effect immediately, so that the reconfigured Vibe servers can now communicate with the additional Lucene nodes, although user access is still disallowed.

8 Reindex the Vibe site, so that the additional Lucene nodes are updated with the same index data that the original Lucene Index Server has:

8a On the Administration page, under *Search Index*, click *Index*.

Search Index ?

Manage Search Index

Optimize Search Index

☐ Re-Index Everything

Select the Places to Be Re-Indexed:

Selecting a folder or workspace automatically indexes all folders and workspaces within it.

☐ Home Workspace
☐ Users and Groups
☐ Global Workspaces
☐ Net Folders
☐ Personal Workspace
☐ Team Workspaces

Select the Nodes to Apply Re-Indexing to:

If re-indexing all or large part of the tree, it is strongly recommended to change the access mode of the node(s) to write-only before starting re-indexing so that all read requests can go to the other unselected node(s) while re-indexing is in progress. At least one node must allow read-write at any given time. Once re-indexing is completed, change the access mode of the node(s) back to read-write so that search requests can use them again.

☐ Lucene on Linux (lucenelinux) - Read and Write, Deferred Update Log Enabled, No Deferred Update Log Record Exists
☐ Lucene on Windows (lucenewindows) - Write Only, Deferred Update Log Enabled, No Deferred Update Log Record Exists

8b On the *Manage Search Index* tab, select *Re-Index Everything*, so that the entire Vibe site is reindexed.

8c Select the additional Lucene nodes, but do not select any previously existing nodes.

8d Click *OK* to start the indexing.

Depending on the size of your Vibe site, reindexing can be a time-consuming process. However, because one or more previously existing Lucene Index Servers are still servicing the Vibe site, users are not affected by the reindexing process.

8e When the reindexing is complete, click *Close*.

9 Make the additional Lucene nodes available to Vibe users:

9a On the Administration page, under *Search Index*, click *Nodes*.

The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring Lucene nodes. It contains two main sections: 'Lucene on Linux (lucenelinux)' and 'Lucene on Windows (lucenewindows)'. Each section displays the host IP (172.16.5.2 for Linux, 172.16.5.19 for Windows) and the RMI port (1199). Below this, there is a 'User Mode Access' section with three radio button options: 'Read and Write' (selected), 'Write Only', and 'No Access'. There is also a checkbox for 'Enable Deferred Update Log' which is checked. At the bottom of each section, it says 'No Deferred Update Log Record Exists'. At the very bottom of the page, there are 'Apply' and 'Close' buttons.

9b In the *User Mode Access* box, change *Write Access* to *Read and Write* for the additional Lucene nodes.

9c Click *Apply*, then click *Close*.

The new setting is put into effect immediately, so that Vibe users have additional Lucene Index Servers available as they use the Vibe site.

17.3 Testing Your Lucene High Availability Configuration

When you first set up your high availability Lucene configuration, you can configure Novell Vibe to write Lucene node information to the Tomcat log file so that you can observe the behavior of the Lucene nodes. Then you can take nodes down and bring them up again to see the effect on your Vibe site. This process helps you prepare for the situation where a Lucene node goes down unexpectedly or you need to take one down on purpose, perhaps for maintenance.

- ♦ [Section 17.3.1, “Configuring Vibe to Log Lucene Node Activity,” on page 157](#)
- ♦ [Section 17.3.2, “Observing Lucene Node Activity,” on page 157](#)

NOTE: For background information about the Tomcat log file, see “[Tomcat Log File](#)” in “[Site Maintenance](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

17.3.1 Configuring Vibe to Log Lucene Node Activity

By default, Vibe writes an error to the Tomcat log file whenever it cannot communicate with a Lucene node. For testing purposes, you can change the logging level so that the Tomcat log file includes a message for each time Vibe contacts a Lucene Index Server.

After observing and understanding the behavior, you should return the logging to normal levels.

- 1 Open the `log4j.properties` file in a text editor.

The location of the `log4j.properties` file varies by platform.

Linux: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/webapps/ssf/WEB-INF`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\`
`webapps\ssf\WEB-INF`

- 2 Search for the following line:

```
#log4j.category.com.novell.teaming.search=DEBUG
```

- 3 Remove the pound sign (#) from the beginning of the line to activate the DEBUG logging level for the Lucene Index Server.

The DEBUG logging level adds a message for each time Vibe contacts a Lucene Index.

- 4 Save the `log4j.properties` file, then exit the text editor.
- 5 Stop Vibe, then start Vibe to put the new logging level into effect.

17.3.2 Observing Lucene Node Activity

After changing the Vibe logging level to include Lucene node activity, you can monitor the Tomcat log file to see which Lucene nodes Vibe is contacting.

- 1 Change to the directory where the Tomcat log file is located.

For background information about the Tomcat log file, see “[Tomcat Log File](#)” in “[Site Maintenance](#)” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

- 2 On Linux, use the `tail` command to monitor the end of the Tomcat log file.

```
tail -f catalina.out
```

or

On Windows, download an equivalent command from the Internet in order to perform the following steps.

For example, there is a command available at [SourceForge.net](http://sourceforge.net/projects/tailforwin32) (<http://sourceforge.net/projects/tailforwin32>).

- 3 Perform some activities on the Vibe site to create new content.

For example, you could create a blog entry. The Tomcat log file shows that Vibe is contacting each available Lucene Index Server in turn as it submits the new information for indexing. Nodes are considered available if they are marked *Read and Write* in the *User Mode Access* box on the Lucene Nodes page.

- 4 Bring down one of the Lucene nodes.

For example, you might reboot the Lucene server, stop the Lucene Index Server on the node, or otherwise prevent Vibe from contacting the Lucene node.

- 5 Observe that the Tomcat log file displays an error when the Lucene node becomes unavailable.

- 6 Perform some additional activities on the Vibe site that create new content.

You might notice a pause as Vibe tries to connect with the Lucene node that is no longer available.

- 7 Observe that the Tomcat log file shows when normal Vibe processing has resumed without access to the unavailable Lucene node.
- 8 Make the unavailable Lucene node available again.
- 9 Observe that the Tomcat log file indicates that Vibe has created a journal record on the Lucene node that was temporarily unavailable.

The journal record contains the indexing operations that failed to take place while the Lucene node was unavailable. Even though the Lucene node is back up, Vibe does not start accessing it until it has been synchronized with the latest index information.


- 10 To synchronize the out-of-date Lucene node, follow the steps in [Section 17.4, “Synchronizing a High Availability Lucene Configuration,”](#) on page 158.

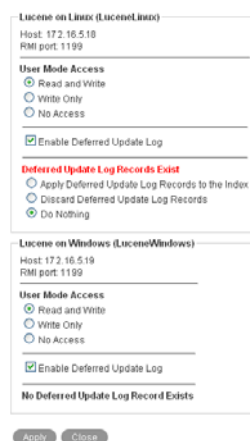
After the out-of-date Lucene node has been synchronized, Vibe starts accessing it again.

If a situation arises where no Lucene node is marked *Read and Write* in the *User Mode Access* box on the Lucene Nodes page, Vibe temporarily accesses the first node in the list that is set to *Write Only*. If no nodes are set to *Write Only* or *Read and Write*, Vibe temporarily accesses the first node in the list, even though it is set to *No Access*. This functionality is required because you cannot log in to the Vibe site without access to a Lucene Index Server.

17.4 Synchronizing a High Availability Lucene Configuration

You should ensure that your Lucene node servers remain in sync with each other. Whenever a Lucene node is down for a relatively short period of time (no more than one or two days), you can synchronize it with other Lucene nodes whose index files are up-to-date.

- 1 Ensure that the out-of-date Lucene node is running reliably again.
- 2 Log in to the Novell Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 3 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
- 4 Under *Search Index*, click *Nodes*.



The screenshot displays the Vibe Administration Console interface for configuring Lucene nodes. It is divided into two sections: 'Lucene on Linux (LuceneLinux)' and 'Lucene on Windows (LuceneWindows)'. Each section shows the host IP (172.16.5.18) and RMI port (1199). Under 'User Mode Access', there are three radio button options: 'Read and Write' (selected), 'Write Only', and 'No Access'. Below this, there is a checkbox for 'Enable Deferred Update Log' which is checked. A red heading 'Deferred Update Log Records Exist' is present in the Linux section, followed by three radio button options: 'Apply Deferred Update Log Records to the Index' (selected), 'Discard Deferred Update Log Records', and 'Do Nothing'. The Windows section shows the same 'User Mode Access' and 'Enable Deferred Update Log' settings, but with the text 'No Deferred Update Log Record Exists' at the bottom. At the very bottom of the console, there are 'Apply' and 'Close' buttons.

- 5 To repair the out-of-date Lucene node, select *Apply Deferred Update Log Records to the Index*, then click *Apply*.

The Deferred Update Log options disappear if the update is successful. If for some reason the deferred update log records cannot be applied to the index, you can rebuild the index, as described in “[Rebuilding the Lucene Index](#)” in “[Site Maintenance](#)” in the [Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide](#).

- 6 Click *Close*.

18 Running Multiple Database Servers

Each of the three databases supported by Novell Vibe (MySQL, Microsoft SQL, and Oracle) has its own approach to clustering the database server. Information about clustering database servers is available on the Internet, for example:

- ♦ [MySQL Cluster](http://www.mysql.com/products/database/cluster) (<http://www.mysql.com/products/database/cluster>)
- ♦ [SQL Server Clustering](http://www.sql-server-performance.com/articles/clustering/clustering_intro_p1.aspx) (http://www.sql-server-performance.com/articles/clustering/clustering_intro_p1.aspx)
- ♦ [Oracle Real Application Clusters](http://www.oracle.com/technology/products/database/clustering) (<http://www.oracle.com/technology/products/database/clustering>)

NOTE: We highly recommend that you follow the instructions in [Part II, “Basic Installation,” on page 37](#) before attempting a more complex Vibe configuration.

V Upgrade

- ♦ [Chapter 19, “Upgrading From Novell Vibe 3.4 to Novell Vibe 4,” on page 165](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 20, “Upgrading From Novell Vibe 3.3 to Novell Vibe 4,” on page 177](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 21, “Upgrading to Novell Vibe 3.3 from Previous Versions,” on page 187](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 22, “Updating the Operating System Where Vibe Is Running,” on page 189](#)

19 Upgrading From Novell Vibe 3.4 to Novell Vibe 4

This section describes how to upgrade from Novell Vibe 3.4 to Novell Vibe 4. You can also upgrade from Vibe 3.3 to Vibe 4, as described in [Chapter 20, “Upgrading From Novell Vibe 3.3 to Novell Vibe 4,” on page 177](#). If you have not yet upgraded to Vibe 3.3, upgrade to Vibe 3.3 as described in [Chapter 21, “Upgrading to Novell Vibe 3.3 from Previous Versions,” on page 187](#). You cannot upgrade from a version prior to Vibe 3.3 to Vibe 4.

After you upgrade your Vibe system, ensure that you check the Vibe download site where you downloaded the Vibe software for any hot patches that might be available.

- ♦ [Section 19.1, “Understanding the Upgrade Process,” on page 165](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.2, “Backing Up Vibe Data,” on page 166](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.3, “Updating the Java Development Kit \(JDK\),” on page 166](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.4, “Installing the Java Cryptography Extension \(JCE\),” on page 166](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.5, “Remote Lucene Index Server Upgrade,” on page 166](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.6, “Upgrading the Vibe Software,” on page 168](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.7, “Upgrading the Vibe Database from 3.4 to 4,” on page 170](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.8, “Performing Post-Upgrade Tasks,” on page 172](#)

19.1 Understanding the Upgrade Process

During the upgrade from Novell Vibe 3.4 to Vibe 4, the following aspects of your Vibe system are modified:

- ♦ The software is upgraded from Vibe 3.4 to Vibe 4.
- ♦ A backup copy of your existing Vibe 3.4 installation is created in the following directory:

Linux: /opt/novell/teaming/teaming-backup

Windows: C:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\teaming-backup

If your original Vibe system began with version 1.0 (this version of Novell Vibe is called Novell Teaming), the backup copy is located in the following directory:

Linux: /opt/icecore

Windows: C:\Program Files\icecore

19.2 Backing Up Vibe Data

Ensure that your Vibe data is backed up before you begin the upgrade process. For information about the data that needs to be backed up, see [“Backing Up Vibe Data”](#) in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*.

Because of significant changes to the database schema, Novell recommends that you use your database backup software to back up your Vibe database before upgrading to Vibe 4.

19.3 Updating the Java Development Kit (JDK)

Vibe 4 requires the latest version of the IBM or Oracle JDK.

Before you begin the upgrade process, update to the latest JDK, as described in [Section A.1, “Java Development Kit \(JDK\),”](#) on page 203.

19.4 Installing the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)

Vibe 4 requires that you also install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) in addition to the JDK on each server in your Vibe system. (This was not a requirement in Vibe 3.4 and earlier.)

Before you begin the upgrade process, install the JCE on each server in your Vibe system, as described in [Section A.2, “Java Cryptography Extension \(JCE\),”](#) on page 205.

19.5 Remote Lucene Index Server Upgrade

IMPORTANT: If your Lucene search index is running on the same server as the Vibe software, you do not need to upgrade it separately. Skip to [Section 19.6, “Upgrading the Vibe Software,”](#) on page 168.

You have the following options when upgrading your remote Lucene search index to Vibe 4:

- ♦ **Create a new search index**

Because a full re-index is required after upgrading to Vibe 4, creating a new search index is less time-consuming than upgrading your existing search index. The benefit to creating a new Lucene search index is that you are able to maintain the original search index in the unlikely case of an emergency rollback.

- ♦ **Upgrade your existing Lucene search index**

If you choose to upgrade your existing Lucene search index, you must perform a re-index after the upgrade, as described in [Section 19.8.1, “Resetting the Search Index,”](#) on page 172.

These options are described in the following sections:

- ♦ [Section 19.5.1, “Creating a New Search Index,”](#) on page 166
- ♦ [Section 19.5.2, “Upgrading an Existing Search Index,”](#) on page 167

19.5.1 Creating a New Search Index

- 1 Stop Vibe.

Linux: On the Vibe server, specify the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/teaming stop
```

Windows: See [“Stopping Vibe as an Application” on page 74](#).

2 Stop the Lucene search index.

On the Lucene index server, specify the following command:

Linux: `/etc/init.d/indexserver stop`

Windows: `c:\Program
Files\Novell\Teaming\luceneserver\indexserver\bin\indexserver-
shutdown.bat`

3 Ensure that no application (such as a command prompt or Windows Explorer) is running on the Vibe 3.4 system.

4 On a different server than where your original search index was running, create a new search index, as described in [Section 15.1, “Installing the Lucene Software,” on page 131](#).

19.5.2 Upgrading an Existing Search Index

The Vibe installation program cannot upgrade the Lucene search index when it is running on a remote server. To upgrade your remote search index from Novell Vibe 3.4 to Novell Vibe 4, you need to run the Remote Lucene Server installation program:

1 Stop Vibe.

Linux: On the Vibe server, specify the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/teaming stop
```

Windows: See [“Stopping Vibe as an Application” on page 74](#).

2 Stop the Lucene search index.

On the Lucene index server, specify the following command:

Linux: `/etc/init.d/indexserver stop`

Windows: `c:\Program
Files\Novell\Teaming\luceneserver\indexserver\bin\indexserver-
shutdown.bat`

3 Ensure that no application (such as a command prompt or Windows Explorer) is running on the Vibe 3.4 system.

4 Copy the Vibe 4 Remote Lucene Server Installation program from the directory where the Vibe 4 Installation program is located to a convenient directory on the server where the remote Lucene search index is located.

The name of the Remote Lucene Server Installation program varies by platform:

Linux: lucene-installer.linux

Windows: lucene-installer.exe

- 5 Start the Vibe 4 Remote Lucene Server installation program.
- 6 Accept the License Agreement, then click *Next*.
- 7 Select *Update software and settings*.
- 8 Click *Next* to continue.
- 9 Click *Next* to accept the installation location.
- 10 Click *Next* to accept the Java JDK location.
- 11 In the *Host* field, specify the hostname where you are installing the remote Lucene Index Server.
- 12 Change Lucene configuration settings as needed, then click *Next*.
For information about Lucene configuration settings, see [Section 10.6.2, “Changing Lucene Configuration Settings,” on page 96](#).
- 13 Click *Install* to install the upgraded Lucene search index software.
- 14 Click *Finish* when the upgrade is complete.
- 15 (Conditional) If memcached is running on the Lucene search index server, reboot the server where it is running to ensure that the 3.4 cache is cleared.
- 16 Start the Lucene Index Server.

On the Lucene index server, specify the following command:

Linux: /etc/init.d/indexserver start

Windows: c:\Program
Files\Novell\Teaming\luceneserver\indexserver\bin\indexserver-
startup.bat

- 17 Ensure that the index server is running.
/etc/init.d/indexserver status
- 18 Now that all remote Vibe components have been upgraded, follow the instructions in [Section 19.6, “Upgrading the Vibe Software,” on page 168](#).

19.6 Upgrading the Vibe Software

Complete the following steps for each server in your Vibe system that is running the Vibe software:

- 1 Ensure that you have a current backup of your Vibe 3.4 system.
- 2 Stop Vibe.

Linux: On the Vibe server, specify the following command:

/etc/init.d/teaming stop

Windows: See [“Stopping Vibe as an Application” on page 74](#).

- 3 Ensure that no application (such as a command prompt or Windows Explorer) is running on the Vibe 3.4 system.

- 4 Copy the `installer.xml` file from the directory where the Vibe 3.4 Installation program is located to the directory where you have extracted the Vibe 4 software.

The `installer.xml` file provides default values when you run the Vibe 3.4 Installation program.

- 5 Obtain a new license key from the location where you downloaded the Vibe 4 software, then place it in the same directory with the Vibe software. (The Vibe installation program does not start without a license file in the same directory.) Rename the license to `license_key.xml`.

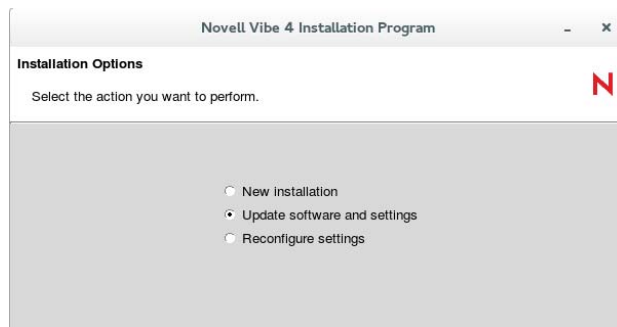
Vibe 4 requires an updated license. If you use a license from a previous version, not all features are available.

- 6 Start the Vibe 4 installation program.

If you need assistance with this task, see the detailed installation instructions for the platform where you are upgrading Vibe:

- ♦ [Section 5.1.2, “Running the Linux Vibe Installation Program,” on page 60](#)
- ♦ [Section 5.2.2, “Running the Windows Vibe Installation Program,” on page 70](#)

- 7 Accept the License Agreement, then click *Next*.



Because you provided your Vibe 3.4 `installer.xml` file in the directory with the Vibe 4 installation program, the *Update software and settings* installation option is selected by default.

- 8 Click *Next* to continue.
- 9 Click *Yes* to let the Installation program know that you have stopped Vibe.
- 10 Select the check box to let the installation program know that you have backed up all of your data, then click *Next*.
- 11 Select *Basic* or *Advanced*, depending on the type of Vibe installation you are upgrading, then click *Next*.

For more information about the differences between basic and advanced installations, see [Section 4.1, “What Is a Basic Vibe Installation?,” on page 39](#) and [Section 10.1, “What Is an Advanced Installation?,” on page 91](#).

- 12 Continue through the installation process, retaining or changing configuration information depending on the needs of your Vibe 4 system.
- 13 Click *Install* when you are ready to perform the upgrade.
- 14 Click *Finish* when the upgrade is complete.
- 15 (Conditional) If memcached is running on the Vibe server, reboot the server to ensure that the 3.4 cache is cleared.
- 16 Continue with [Section 19.7, “Upgrading the Vibe Database from 3.4 to 4,” on page 170](#).

19.7 Upgrading the Vibe Database from 3.4 to 4

Upgrade the Vibe software (as described in [Section 20.5, “Upgrading the Vibe Software,” on page 180](#)) before upgrading the Vibe database.

When you upgrade to Vibe 4, the Vibe Installation program does not update the database as part of the Vibe software upgrade. Therefore, you must manually update the database before you can start Vibe:

- 1 (Conditional) When upgrading a MySQL database, ensure that the Vibe database character set for the Vibe 3.4 system is in UTF-8 format.

1a To view the character set format, run the following command:

```
SELECT default_character_set_name FROM information_schema.SCHEMATA S WHERE  
schema_name = 'sitescape';
```

In this command `sitescape` is the name of the Vibe database. Replace `sitescape` with the name of your database.

- 1b If the character set format is anything other than UTF-8, run the following command to change it:

In the following command, `sitescape` is the name of the Vibe database. Replace `sitescape` with the name of your database.

```
ALTER DATABASE sitescape CHARACTER SET utf8;
```

- 2 Change to the `db` directory in the Vibe installation:

```
cd /vibe_installation/temp-installer/db
```

This directory contains the following properties files:

- ♦ `mysql-liquibase.properties`
- ♦ `Oracle-liquibase.properties`
- ♦ `sqlserver-liquibase.properties`

- 3 In a text editor, open the properties file that corresponds with your database type to make any of the following changes. Save and close the text editor when you are finished making changes.

- ♦ Change the database user name and password for accessing the database.
- ♦ (Conditional) Specify the IP address for the database if it is running on a remote server.
You need to replace `localhost` with the IP address of the remote server.
- ♦ (Optional) Change the name of the Vibe database (the default name of the Vibe database is `sitescape`, the name of the company that previously developed the Vibe software).

- 4 Save your changes and close the properties file.

- 5 In the same directory (`/vibe_installation/temp-installer/db`), execute the following commands to update the database schema:

Windows `manage-database.bat databaseType mark33DatabaseAsUpdated`
`manage-database.bat databaseType updateDatabase`

Possible database types (*databaseType*) are `mysql`, `oracle`, or `sqlserver`, depending on your type of database.

Linux `./manage-database.sh databaseType mark33DatabaseAsUpdated`
`./manage-database.sh databaseType updateDatabase`

Possible database types (*databaseType*) are `mysql`, `oracle`, or `sqlserver`, depending on your type of database.

NOTE: Ensure that the `manage-database.sh` file is executable.

NOTE: You can safely ignore the following Liquibase log messages:

- ♦ `Warning: modifyDataType will lose primary key/autoincrement/not null settings for mysql`
 - ♦ Any messages that contain the words `info: failure` or `info: failed`, as long as they are associated with a type `INFO` message
-

6 Start Vibe 4 in the same way that you have been starting Vibe 3.4.

When you start Vibe for the first time after the upgrade, it takes longer to start than usual because data in the Vibe database must be upgraded before the Vibe site is ready to use.

Linux: On the Vibe server, specify the following command:

`/etc/init.d/teaming start`

Windows: See [“Starting Vibe as an Application” on page 74](#).

or

See [“Starting Vibe as a Windows Service” on page 73](#).

NOTE: If you have been starting Vibe as a Windows service, you need to delete your existing Windows service configuration and re-configure Vibe as a Windows service before you can start Vibe. For information about how to configure Vibe as a Windows service, see [“Configuring Vibe as a Windows Service” on page 73](#).

7 (Recommended) For security reasons, delete the password that you specified in [Step 7](#) in [“Creating the Vibe Database” on page 63](#).

7a Change to the `db` directory in the Vibe installation:

`cd /vibe_installation/temp-installer/db`

This directory contains the following properties files:

- ♦ `mysql-liquibase.properties`
- ♦ `Oracle-liquibase.properties`
- ♦ `sqlserver-liquibase.properties`

7b In a text editor, open the `database_type-liquibase.properties` file that corresponds with your database type, then delete the password.

7c Save and close the properties file.

8 Continue with [Section 19.8, “Performing Post-Upgrade Tasks,” on page 172](#).

19.8 Performing Post-Upgrade Tasks

After you start Novell Vibe 4, you can access your Vibe site as usual. However, you need to reset some aspects of the interface before you allow users to access the upgraded site. The interface reset affects only those definitions and templates that are included with the Vibe product. If you have created custom definitions and templates, they are unaffected by the interface reset.

- ♦ [Section 19.8.1, “Resetting the Search Index,” on page 172](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.8.2, “Resetting Your Definitions,” on page 173](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.8.3, “Resetting the Standard Templates,” on page 174](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.8.4, “Updating the Vibe License,” on page 174](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.8.5, “Re-Installing the Windows Service,” on page 174](#)
- ♦ [Section 19.8.6, “Updating the Server.xml File When Using Secure HTTP,” on page 175](#)

19.8.1 Resetting the Search Index


In order for an upgraded search index to be compatible with Vibe 4, you need to re-index the search index. Until you reset the search index, the search index and the vibe server are not in a compatible state. The `catalina.out` and `appserver.log` files show errors until the search index is reset.

The steps to reset the search index differ depending on whether you have multiple Lucene Index servers. For more information about multiple search indexes, see [Chapter 17, “Running Multiple Lucene Index Servers,” on page 143](#).

Depending on the size of your Vibe site, this can be a very time-consuming process.

- ♦ [“Resetting a Single Search Index” on page 172](#)
- ♦ [“Resetting the Search Index with Multiple Index Servers” on page 173](#)

Resetting a Single Search Index

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
- 3 In the *Management* section, click *Search Index*.
- 4 Select *Re-Index Everything*.
- 5 Click *OK*, then click *Close*.


Users can still access the Vibe site during the indexing process, but search results might not be accurate until the index has been completely rebuilt.

A message notifies you when indexing is complete.

- 6 After the index server has been reset, ensure that no errors are contained in the following log files:

Windows:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ <code>C:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\logs\catalina.out</code>♦ <code>C:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\logs\appserver.log</code>
Linux:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ <code>/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/logs/catalina.out</code>♦ <code>/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/logs/appserver.log</code>

Resetting the Search Index with Multiple Index Servers

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
- 3 In the *Search Index* section, click *Index*.
- 4 Select *Re-Index Everything*.
- 5 Select each node that you want to re-index.
- 6 Click *OK*, then click *Close*.

Users can still access the Vibe site during the indexing process, but search results might not be accurate until the index has been completely rebuilt.

A message notifies you when indexing is complete.

- 7 After the index server has been reset, ensure that no errors are contained in the following log files:


Windows:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ C:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\logs\catalina.out♦ C:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\apache-tomcat\logs\appserver.log
Linux:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">♦ /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/logs/catalina.out♦ /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/logs/appserver.log

19.8.2 Resetting Your Definitions

Various aspects of the Vibe interface have been redesigned and enhanced since Vibe 3.4. Some of these enhancements affect entries, folders, user profiles, and user workspaces. If you have made customizations to these areas of Vibe, you must reset these definitions in order to see the enhancements, as described in this section.


WARNING: The following procedure deletes any custom modifications that you have previously made to the default Vibe definitions. If you want to save any modified definitions before proceeding, you can export the modified definitions. Also, you might want to document exactly what changes you have made in order to make it easier to reconstruct the definition after you reset it. This applies only to definitions that you have modified; definitions that you have created are not affected.

To reset your Vibe definitions:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
- 3 In the *System* section, click *Form/View Designers* to display the Form and View Designers page.
- 4 Click *Reset*.
The Reset Definitions page is displayed.
- 5 Click *Select All*.
You can expand each definition to ensure that all definitions have been selected.
- 6 Click *OK*.

19.8.3 Resetting the Standard Templates

IMPORTANT: The following procedure deletes any custom modifications that you have previously made to the default Vibe templates. If you have manually customized any default Vibe templates, back up the files you have modified before performing the interface reset. This applies only to default templates that you have modified; templates that you have created are not affected.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
- 3 In the *Management* section, click *Workspace and Folder Templates*.

Workspace and Folder Templates

New ▾ Reset Import Export

Standard Templates

- **Discussion** - A Discussion folder is useful for creating a forum where users are likely to both create and reply to entries.
- **Blog** - A blog folder is a forum where entire entries are displayed in reverse chronological order, based on when they were created. Blogs typically pro larger group can make comments on the entries posted by the original author.
- **Calendar** - A calendar folder is a place to post group events or display other types of entries by date.
- **Guestbook** - A guestbook folder is a simple place that individuals can "sign," indicating that they have visited a user's Personal Workspace. Visitors ma A picture of the individual signing the guestbook is displayed with the comment. The guestbook is useful for expanding users' social networks.
- **Files** - A file folder is a place to put files. Comments or entire discussions can be posted about individual files. Additionally, the files can be automatical user to add and delete files via any WebDAV client, such as the MS Windows File Manager.
- **Milestones** - A milestone folder is used to roll up or summarize activity in one or more Task folders.
- **Micro-Blog** - A micro-blog folder is a special folder that gets created automatically for each user. It is intended to contain short text entries only. Each us one that is created automatically will be accessed as the user's real micro-blog.
- **Mirrored Files** - A mirrored file folder is a special type of file folder where it uses a server file system directory as its file storage area instead of the norm knowledge about the folder contents in synch with whatever is in the directory. The mirrored folder feature can mirror any WebDAV or local file path.

- 4 Click *Reset*.
- 5 Click *OK* to confirm, then click *Close*.

Your Vibe 4 site is now ready for use.

19.8.4 Updating the Vibe License

After upgrading to Vibe 4, you need to update the Vibe license, as described in [Chapter 7, "Updating Your Vibe License,"](#) on page 79.

19.8.5 Re-Installing the Windows Service

If you installed Vibe as a Windows service (as described in ["Running Vibe as a Windows Service"](#) on [page 73](#)), you must remove the service and re-install it. This is necessary because the original service references an unsupported version of Tomcat.

19.8.6 Updating the Server.xml File When Using Secure HTTP

The `server.xml` Tomcat configuration file is overwritten during the upgrade to Vibe 4. If you set up secure HTTP browser connections to the Vibe server, and if you changed the password for the `.keystore` file to something other than the default `changeit`, you need to update the `server.xml` file after upgrading to Vibe 4.

For information about how to update the `.keystore` password in the `server.xml` file, see [“Changing Your Password for the Keystore File”](#) in the [Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide](#).

20 Upgrading From Novell Vibe 3.3 to Novell Vibe 4

This section describes how to upgrade from Novell Vibe 3.3 to Novell Vibe 4. You must upgrade to Vibe 3.3 if you have not already, as described in [Chapter 21, “Upgrading to Novell Vibe 3.3 from Previous Versions,”](#) on page 187. You cannot upgrade from a version prior to Vibe 3.3 to Vibe 4.

After you upgrade your Vibe system, ensure that you check the Vibe download site where you downloaded the Vibe software for any hot patches that might be available.

- ♦ [Section 20.1, “Understanding the Upgrade Process,”](#) on page 177
- ♦ [Section 20.2, “Backing Up Vibe Data,”](#) on page 177
- ♦ [Section 20.3, “Installing the Java Cryptography Extension \(JCE\),”](#) on page 178
- ♦ [Section 20.4, “Remote Lucene Index Server Upgrade,”](#) on page 178
- ♦ [Section 20.5, “Upgrading the Vibe Software,”](#) on page 180
- ♦ [Section 20.6, “Updating the Vibe Database from 3.3 to 4,”](#) on page 181
- ♦ [Section 20.7, “Performing Post-Upgrade Tasks,”](#) on page 183

20.1 Understanding the Upgrade Process

During the upgrade from Novell Vibe 3.3 to Vibe 4, the following aspects of your Vibe system are modified:

- ♦ The software is upgraded from Vibe 3.3 to Vibe 4.
- ♦ A backup copy of your existing Vibe 3.3 installation is created in the following directory:

Linux: /opt/novell/teaming/teaming-backup

Windows: C:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming\teaming-backup

If your original Vibe system began with version 1.0 (this version of Novell Vibe is called Novell Teaming), the backup copy is located in the following directory:

Linux: /opt/icecore

Windows: C:\Program Files\icecore

20.2 Backing Up Vibe Data

Ensure that your Vibe data is backed up before you begin the upgrade process. For information about the data that needs to be backed up, see [“Backing Up Vibe Data”](#) in the [Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide](#).

20.3 Installing the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)

Vibe 4 requires that you also install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) in addition to the JDK on each server in your Vibe system. (This was not a requirement in Vibe 3.4 and earlier.)

Before you begin the upgrade process, install the JCE on each server in your Vibe system, as described in [Section A.2, “Java Cryptography Extension \(JCE\),” on page 205](#).

20.4 Remote Lucene Index Server Upgrade

IMPORTANT: If your Lucene search index is running on the same server as the Vibe software, you do not need to upgrade it separately. Skip to [Section 20.5, “Upgrading the Vibe Software,” on page 180](#).

You have the following options when upgrading your remote Lucene search index to Vibe 4:

- ♦ **Create a new search index**

Because a full re-index is required after upgrading to Vibe 4, creating a new search index is less time-consuming than upgrading your existing search index. The benefit to creating a new Lucene search index is that you are able maintain the original search index in the unlikely case of an emergency rollback.

- ♦ **Upgrade your existing Lucene search index**

If you choose to upgrade your existing Lucene search index, you must perform a re-index after the upgrade, as described in [Section 19.8.1, “Resetting the Search Index,” on page 172](#).

These options are described in the following sections:

- ♦ [Section 20.4.1, “Creating a New Search Index,” on page 178](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.4.2, “Upgrading an Existing Search Index,” on page 179](#)

20.4.1 Creating a New Search Index

1 Stop Vibe.

Linux: On the Vibe server, specify the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/teaming stop
```

Windows: See [“Stopping Vibe as an Application” on page 74](#).

2 Stop the Lucene search index.

On the Lucene index server, specify the following command:

Linux: `/etc/init.d/indexserver stop`

Windows: `c:\Program
Files\Novell\Teaming\luceneserver\indexserver\bin\indexserver-
shutdown.bat`

- 3 Ensure that no application (such as a command prompt or Windows Explorer) is running on the Vibe 3.3 system.
- 4 On a different server than where your original search index was running, create a new search index, as described in [Section 15.1, “Installing the Lucene Software,” on page 131](#).

20.4.2 Upgrading an Existing Search Index

The Vibe installation program cannot upgrade the Lucene search index when it is running on a remote server. To upgrade your remote search index from Novell Vibe 3.3 to Novell Vibe 4, you need to run the Remote Lucene Server installation program:

- 1 Stop Vibe.

Linux: On the Vibe server, specify the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/teaming stop
```

Windows: See [“Stopping Vibe as an Application” on page 74](#).

- 2 Stop the Lucene search index.

On the Lucene index server, specify the following command:

Linux: `/etc/init.d/indexserver stop`

Windows: `c:\Program
Files\Novell\Teaming\luceneserver\indexserver\bin\indexserver-
shutdown.bat`

- 3 Ensure that no application (such as a command prompt or Windows Explorer) is running on the Vibe 3.3 system.
- 4 Copy the Vibe 4 Remote Lucene Server Installation program from the directory where the Vibe 4 Installation program is located to a convenient directory on the server where the remote Lucene search index is located.

The name of the Remote Lucene Server Installation program varies by platform:

Linux: `lucene-installer.linux`

Windows: `lucene-installer.exe`

- 5 Start the Vibe 4 Remote Lucene Server installation program.
- 6 Accept the License Agreement, then click *Next*.
- 7 Select *Update software and settings*.
- 8 Click *Next* to continue.
- 9 Click *Next* to accept the installation location.
- 10 Click *Next* to accept the Java JDK location.
- 11 In the *Host* field, specify the hostname where you are installing the remote Lucene Index Server.
- 12 Change Lucene configuration settings as needed, then click *Next*.
For information about Lucene configuration settings, see [Section 10.6.2, “Changing Lucene Configuration Settings,” on page 96](#).
- 13 Click *Install* to install the upgraded Lucene search index software.

- 14 Click *Finish* when the upgrade is complete.
- 15 (Conditional) If memcached is running on the Lucene search index server, reboot the server where it is running to ensure that the 3.3 cache is cleared.
- 16 Start the Lucene Index Server.

On the Lucene index server, specify the following command:

Linux: `/etc/init.d/indexserver start`

Windows: `c:\Program
Files\Novell\Teaming\luceneserver\indexserver\bin\indexserver-
startup.bat`

- 17 Ensure that the index server is running.
 `/etc/init.d/indexserver status`
- 18 Now that all remote Vibe components have been upgraded, follow the instructions in [Section 20.5, “Upgrading the Vibe Software,” on page 180](#).

20.5 Upgrading the Vibe Software

- 1 Ensure that you have a current backup of your Vibe 3.3 system.
- 2 Stop Vibe.

Linux: On the Vibe server, specify the following command:

`/etc/init.d/teaming stop`

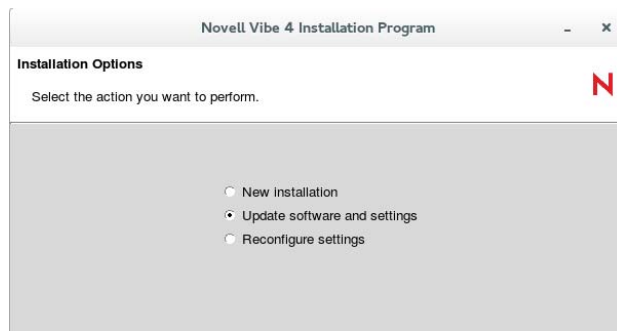
Windows: See [“Stopping Vibe as an Application” on page 74](#).

- 3 Ensure that no application (such as a command prompt or Windows Explorer) is running on the Vibe 3.3 system.
- 4 Copy the `installer.xml` file from the directory where the Vibe 3.3 Installation program is located to the directory where you have extracted the Vibe 4 software.

The `installer.xml` file provides default values when you run the Vibe 3.3 Installation program.
- 5 Obtain a new license key from the location where you downloaded the Vibe 4 software, then place it in the same directory with the Vibe software. (The Vibe installation program does not start without a license file in the same directory.) Rename the license to `license_key.xml`.

Vibe 4 requires an updated license. If you use a license from a previous version, not all features are available.
- 6 Start the Vibe 4 installation program.

If you need assistance with this task, see the detailed installation instructions for the platform where you are upgrading Vibe:
 - ♦ [Section 5.1.2, “Running the Linux Vibe Installation Program,” on page 60](#)
 - ♦ [Section 5.2.2, “Running the Windows Vibe Installation Program,” on page 70](#)
- 7 Accept the License Agreement, then click *Next*.



Because you provided your Vibe 3.3 `installer.xml` file in the directory with the Vibe 4 installation program, the *Update software and settings* installation option is selected by default.

- 8 Click *Next* to continue.
- 9 Click *Yes* to let the Installation program know that you have stopped Vibe.
- 10 Select the check box to let the installation program know that you have backed up all of your data, then click *Next*.
- 11 Select *Basic* or *Advanced*, depending on the type of Vibe installation you are upgrading, then click *Next*.
For more information about the differences between basic and advanced installations, see [Section 4.1, “What Is a Basic Vibe Installation?” on page 39](#) and [Section 10.1, “What Is an Advanced Installation?” on page 91](#).
- 12 Continue through the installation process, retaining or changing configuration information depending on the needs of your Vibe 4 system.
- 13 Click *Install* when you are ready to perform the upgrade.
- 14 Click *Finish* when the upgrade is complete.
- 15 (Conditional) If memcached is running on the Vibe server, reboot the server to ensure that the 3.3 cache is cleared.
- 16 Continue with [Section 20.6, “Updating the Vibe Database from 3.3 to 4,” on page 181](#).

20.6 Updating the Vibe Database from 3.3 to 4

Upgrade the Vibe software (as described in [Section 20.5, “Upgrading the Vibe Software,” on page 180](#)) before upgrading the Vibe database.

When you upgrade to Vibe 4, the Vibe Installation program does not update the database as part of the Vibe software upgrade. Therefore, you must manually update the database before you can start Vibe:

- 1 (Conditional) When upgrading a MySQL database, ensure that the Vibe database character set for the Vibe 3.4 system is in UTF-8 format.
 - 1a To view the character set format, run the following command:
In the following command, `sitescape` is the name of the Vibe database. Replace `sitescape` with the name of your database.

```
SELECT default_character_set_name FROM information_schema.SCHEMATA S WHERE schema_name = 'sitescape';
```
 - 1b If the character set format is anything other than UTF-8, run the following command to change it:

```
ALTER DATABASE sitescape CHARACTER SET utf8;
```

In this command `sitescape` is the name of the Vibe database. Replace `sitescape` with the name of your database.

2 Change to the `db` directory in the Vibe installation:

```
cd /vibe_installation/temp-installer/db
```

This directory contains the following properties files:

- ♦ `mysql-liquibase.properties`
- ♦ `Oracle-liquibase.properties`
- ♦ `sqlserver-liquibase.properties`

3 In a text editor, open the properties file that corresponds with your database type to make any of the following changes. Save and close the text editor when you are finished making changes.

- ♦ Change the database user name and password for accessing the database.
- ♦ (Conditional) Specify the IP address for the database if it is running on a remote server.
You need to replace `localhost` with the IP address of the remote server.
- ♦ (Optional) Change the name of the Vibe database (the default name of the Vibe database is `sitescape`, the name of the company that previously developed the Vibe software).

4 Save your changes and close the properties file.

5 In the same directory (`/vibe_installation/temp-installer/db`), execute the following commands to update the database schema:

Windows `manage-database.bat databaseType mark33DatabaseAsUpdated`

`manage-database.bat databaseType updateDatabase`

Possible database types (*databaseType*) are `mysql`, `oracle`, or `sqlserver`, depending on your type of database.

Linux `./manage-database.sh databaseType mark33DatabaseAsUpdated`

`./manage-database.sh databaseType updateDatabase`

Possible database types (*databaseType*) are `mysql`, `oracle`, or `sqlserver`, depending on your type of database.

NOTE: Ensure that the `manage-database.sh` file is executable.

NOTE: You can safely ignore the following Liquibase log messages:

- ♦ Warning: `modifyDataType` will lose primary key/autoincrement/not null settings for `mysql`
 - ♦ Any messages that contain the words `info: failure` or `info: failed`, as long as they are associated with a type `INFO` message
-

6 Start Vibe 4 in the same way that you have been starting Vibe 3.3.

When you start Vibe for the first time after the upgrade, it takes longer to start than usual because data in the Vibe database must be upgraded before the Vibe site is ready to use.

Linux: On the Vibe server, specify the following command:

```
/etc/init.d/teaming start
```

Windows: See [“Starting Vibe as an Application” on page 74](#).

or

See [“Starting Vibe as a Windows Service” on page 73](#).

NOTE: If you have been starting Vibe as a Windows service, you need to delete your existing Windows service configuration and re-configure Vibe as a Windows service before you can start Vibe. For information about how to configure Vibe as a Windows service, see [“Configuring Vibe as a Windows Service” on page 73](#).

7 (Recommended) For security reasons, delete the password that you specified in [Step 7](#) in [“Creating the Vibe Database” on page 63](#).

7a Change to the `db` directory in the Vibe installation:

```
cd /vibe_installation/temp-installer/db
```

This directory contains the following properties files:

- ♦ `mysql-liquibase.properties`
- ♦ `Oracle-liquibase.properties`
- ♦ `sqlserver-liquibase.properties`

7b In a text editor, open the `database_type-liquibase.properties` file that corresponds with your database type, then delete the password.

7c Save and close the properties file.

8 Continue with [Section 20.7, “Performing Post-Upgrade Tasks,” on page 183](#).

20.7 Performing Post-Upgrade Tasks

After you start Novell Vibe 4, you can access your Vibe site as usual. However, you need to reset some aspects of the interface before you allow users to access the upgraded site. The interface reset affects only those definitions and templates that are included with the Vibe product. If you have created custom definitions and templates, they are unaffected by the interface reset.

- ♦ [Section 20.7.1, “Resetting the Search Index,” on page 184](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.7.2, “Resetting Your Definitions,” on page 184](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.7.3, “Resetting the Standard Templates,” on page 185](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.7.4, “Updating the Vibe License,” on page 186](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.7.5, “Re-Installing the Windows Service,” on page 186](#)
- ♦ [Section 20.7.6, “Updating the Server.xml File When Using Secure HTTP,” on page 186](#)

20.7.1 Resetting the Search Index


In order for an upgraded search index to be compatible with Vibe 4, you need to re-index the search index.

The steps to reset the search index differ depending on whether you have multiple Lucene Index servers. For more information about multiple search indexes, see [Chapter 17, “Running Multiple Lucene Index Servers,” on page 143](#).

Depending on the size of your Vibe site, this can be a very time-consuming process.

- ♦ [“Resetting a Single Search Index” on page 184](#)
- ♦ [“Resetting the Search Index with Multiple Index Servers” on page 184](#)


Resetting a Single Search Index

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
- 3 In the *Management* section, click *Search Index*.
- 4 Select *Re-Index Everything*.
- 5 Click *OK*, then click *Close*.

Users can still access the Vibe site during the indexing process, but search results might not be accurate until the index has been completely rebuilt.

A message notifies you when indexing is complete.

Resetting the Search Index with Multiple Index Servers

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
- 3 In the *Search Index* section, click *Index*.
- 4 Select *Re-Index Everything*.
- 5 Select each node that you want to re-index.
- 6 Click *OK*, then click *Close*.

Users can still access the Vibe site during the indexing process, but search results might not be accurate until the index has been completely rebuilt.


A message notifies you when indexing is complete.

20.7.2 Resetting Your Definitions

Various aspects of the Vibe interface have been redesigned and enhanced since Vibe 3.3. Some of these enhancements affect entries, folders, user profiles, and user workspaces. If you have made customizations to these areas of Vibe, you must reset these definitions in order to see the enhancements, as described in this section.


WARNING: The following procedure deletes any custom modifications that you have previously made to the default Vibe definitions. If you want to save any modified definitions before proceeding, you can export the modified definitions. Also, you might want to document exactly what changes you have made in order to make it easier to reconstruct the definition after you reset it. This applies only to definitions that you have modified; definitions that you have created are not affected.

To reset your Vibe definitions:

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
- 3 In the *System* section, click *Form/View Designers* to display the Form and View Designers page.
- 4 Click *Reset*.
The Reset Definitions page is displayed.
- 5 Click *Select All*.
You can expand each definition to ensure that all definitions have been selected.
- 6 Click *OK*.

20.7.3 Resetting the Standard Templates

IMPORTANT: The following procedure deletes any custom modifications that you have previously made to the default Vibe templates. If you have manually customized any default Vibe templates, back up the files you have modified before performing the interface reset. This applies only to default templates that you have modified; templates that you have created are not affected.

- 1 Log in to the Vibe site as the Vibe administrator.
- 2 Click your linked name in the upper right corner of the page, then click the *Administration Console* icon .
- 3 In the *Management* section, click *Workspace and Folder Templates*.

Workspace and Folder Templates

New ▼ Reset Import Export

Standard Templates

- **Discussion** - A Discussion folder is useful for creating a forum where users are likely to both create and reply to entries.
- **Blog** - A blog folder is a forum where entire entries are displayed in reverse chronological order, based on when they were created. Blogs typically pro- larger group can make comments on the entries posted by the original author.
- **Calendar** - A calendar folder is a place to post group events or display other types of entries by date.
- **Guestbook** - A guestbook folder is a simple place that individuals can "sign," indicating that they have visited a user's Personal Workspace. Visitors ma- A picture of the individual signing the guestbook is displayed with the comment. The guestbook is useful for expanding users' social networks.
- **Files** - A file folder is a place to put files. Comments or entire discussions can be posted about individual files. Additionally, the files can be automatic- user to add and delete files via any WebDAV client, such as the MS Windows File Manager.
- **Milestones** - A milestone folder is used to roll up or summarize activity in one or more Task folders.
- **Micro-Blog** - A micro-blog folder is a special folder that gets created automatically for each user. It is intended to contain short text entries only. Each us- one that is created automatically will be accessed as the user's real micro-blog.
- **Mirrored Files** - A mirrored file folder is a special type of file folder where it uses a server file system directory as its file storage area instead of the non- knowledge about the folder contents in synch with whatever is in the directory. The mirrored folder feature can mirror any WebDAV or local file path.

- 4 Click *Reset*.
- 5 Click *OK* to confirm, then click *Close*.

Your Vibe 4 site is now ready for use.

20.7.4 Updating the Vibe License

After upgrading to Vibe 4, you need to update the Vibe license, as described in [Chapter 7, “Updating Your Vibe License,” on page 79](#).

20.7.5 Re-Installing the Windows Service

If you installed Vibe as a Windows service (as described in [“Running Vibe as a Windows Service” on page 73](#)), you must remove the service and re-install it. This is necessary because the original service references an unsupported version of Tomcat.

20.7.6 Updating the Server.xml File When Using Secure HTTP

The `server.xml` Tomcat configuration file is overwritten during the upgrade to Vibe 4. If you set up secure HTTP browser connections to the Vibe server, and if you changed the password for the `.keystore` file to something other than the default `changeit`, you need to update the `server.xml` file after upgrading to Vibe 4.

For information about how to update the `.keystore` password in the `server.xml` file, see [“Changing Your Password for the Keystore File”](#) in the [Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide](#).

21 Upgrading to Novell Vibe 3.3 from Previous Versions

For information about how to upgrade to Vibe 3.3, see “Update” (https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe33/vibe33_inst/data/bj0kxa6.html) in the *Novell Vibe 3.3 Installation Guide* (https://www.novell.com/documentation/vibe33/vibe33_inst/data/bookinfo.html).

22 Updating the Operating System Where Vibe Is Running

You can update the operating system where Vibe is running.

- 1 Update the Linux or Windows operating system to a version that Vibe supports.

For information about which versions are supported, see [Section 2.1, “Vibe Server Requirements,” on page 17](#).

For information about how to update the operating system, view the appropriate documentation for your operating system.

- 2 (Conditional) If you updated a Linux server, the TrueType font path that Vibe uses for document conversion might be broken after the update. To fix this problem, you need to re-run the Vibe installation after upgrading the Linux operating system.

For information on how to run the Vibe installation, see [Section 5.1, “Linux: Installing and Setting Up a Basic Vibe Site,” on page 59](#) for a basic installation, or [Chapter 11, “Performing an Advanced Vibe Installation,” on page 115](#) for an advanced installation.

VI Migrate

- ♦ [Chapter 23, “Migrating Existing Novell Vibe 4 Data into a New Vibe 4 System,” on page 193](#)
- ♦ [Chapter 24, “Migrating from SiteScape Forum or Other Collaboration Software,” on page 199](#)

23 Migrating Existing Novell Vibe 4 Data into a New Vibe 4 System

IMPORTANT: The term “data migration” as used in this section, is essentially about creating a clone of an existing Vibe system.

Data migration between servers running different versions of Vibe is not supported. However, you can use data migration in conjunction with an upgrade (see [Section 23.1, “Using Data Migration in Conjunction with an Upgrade to Vibe 4,”](#) on page 194).

This section describes how to migrate data from an existing Vibe 4 server to a new Vibe 4 server. You might want to do this for any of the following reasons:

- ♦ Your existing Vibe system has outgrown the server where you originally set it up.
- ♦ You want to move your existing Vibe system to a different operating system.
In this case, you can install Vibe 4 on a new server, then migrate your existing Vibe 4 data to your new Vibe 4 system.
- ♦ You want to preserve your old system in its current state.
- ♦ You created your Vibe system by using the [Virtual Eval version of the Novell Vibe Starter Pack](http://download.novell.com/Download?buildid=Y7J2HFucjfw~) (<http://download.novell.com/Download?buildid=Y7J2HFucjfw~>).
- ♦ You are upgrading from Kablink Vibe to Novell Vibe.

NOTE: In the instructions that follow, “target server” refers to the server where you install the Vibe 4 software, and “source server” refers to the existing server from which you are migrating Vibe data.

The instructions in this section are based on a single-server Vibe configuration. If you have a multi-server Vibe configuration, the single-server instructions can serve as a foundation to get you started with your more complex migration process.

This section does not include instructions for migrating an Oracle database. Use the instructions for your Vibe platform as a guideline for the tasks that are involved in migrating Vibe data, then apply these guidelines to your Oracle database migration.

- ♦ [Section 23.1, “Using Data Migration in Conjunction with an Upgrade to Vibe 4,”](#) on page 194
- ♦ [Section 23.2, “Linux Migration with a MySQL Database,”](#) on page 194
- ♦ [Section 23.3, “Windows Migration with an MS SQL Database,”](#) on page 196

23.1 Using Data Migration in Conjunction with an Upgrade to Vibe 4

As stated above, data migration between servers running different versions of Vibe is not supported.

If you want to migrate data from Vibe 3.4 to a new Vibe 4 system, you have two basic choices:

- ♦ You can
 1. Upgrade the Vibe 3.4 server to Vibe 4.
 2. Install a new Vibe 4 server
 3. Migrate the data from the old Vibe 4 server to the new Vibe 4 system.
- Or
- ♦ You can
 1. Install Vibe 3.4 on the new server.
 2. Migrate the data from the existing Vibe 3.4 server to the new Vibe 3.4 server
 3. When you are assured that everything is running as expected, upgrade the new server to Vibe 4.

23.2 Linux Migration with a MySQL Database

- ♦ [Section 23.2.1, “Preparing the Target Linux Server,” on page 194](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.2.2, “Preparing the Source Linux Server,” on page 195](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.2.3, “Transferring Data from the Source Server to the Target Server,” on page 195](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.2.4, “Importing the Vibe Database to the Target Server,” on page 195](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.2.5, “Finalizing Your New Vibe 4 Site,” on page 196](#)

23.2.1 Preparing the Target Linux Server

On the target server:

- 1 Install the Vibe 4 software on the target server, as described in [Part II, “Basic Installation,” on page 37](#), paying special attention to these important details:
 - ♦ Set up the same Linux user to run the Vibe software that has been used to run the Vibe software in the source Vibe server.
 - ♦ Select the same encryption algorithm for the Vibe database that was used for the source Vibe server.

IMPORTANT: If the database encryption algorithms do not match between the source and target Vibe systems, you cannot log in to the new Vibe 4 site.

- 2 Start Vibe on the target server.
- 3 Verify that the new Vibe site is working as expected.
- 4 Stop Vibe on the target server.
- 5 Rename the `teaming` directory to `teaming_backup`. In a future step, you will copy the `teaming` directory from the source server to the target server.

The location of the `teaming` directory varies by platform:

Linux: /var/opt/novell/teaming

Windows: c:\novell\teaming

- 6 Continue with [Section 23.2.2, “Preparing the Source Linux Server,”](#) on page 195.

23.2.2 Preparing the Source Linux Server

On the source server:

- 1 Stop Vibe.
- 2 Back up your existing database:

```
mysqldump -uusername -ppassword sitescape > sitescape.sql
```

This creates a file named `sitescape.sql` in the directory where you executed the `mysqldump` command.
- 3 Ensure that you have a recent backup of your entire Vibe system.
- 4 Continue with [Section 23.2.3, “Transferring Data from the Source Server to the Target Server,”](#) on page 195.

23.2.3 Transferring Data from the Source Server to the Target Server

On the source server:

- 1 Mount the target server to the source server so that data can be copied from one server to the other.
- 2 In a terminal window on the source server, become the Linux user that runs the Vibe software.
- 3 Copy the database backup of your existing Vibe database (`sitescape.sql` file) that you created in [Step 2](#) in [Section 23.2.2, “Preparing the Source Linux Server,”](#) on page 195 to a convenient temporary location on the target server.
- 4 Copy the entire data area from `/var/opt/novell/teaming` on the source server to the same location on the target server.
- 5 (Conditional) If you are using secure LDAP (LDAPS), you need to copy the `cacerts` file to the same location on the target server.
- 6 Continue with [Section 23.2.4, “Importing the Vibe Database to the Target Server,”](#) on page 195.

23.2.4 Importing the Vibe Database to the Target Server

On the target server:

- 1 Remove the empty Vibe database that was created when you installed the Vibe 4 software:

```
mysql>drop database sitescape;
```
- 2 Change to the directory where you copied the `sitescape.sql` file in [Step 3](#) in [Section 23.2.3, “Transferring Data from the Source Server to the Target Server,”](#) on page 195.
- 3 Create an empty database called `sitescape`:

```
mysql -uusername -ppassword -e "create database sitescape"
```

- 4 Manually re-create the Vibe database with the data that you copied from the source server:

```
mysql -uusername -ppassword sitescape < sitescape.sql
```

23.2.5 Finalizing Your New Vibe 4 Site

- 1 Start Vibe 4, as described in [“Starting Vibe on Linux” on page 67](#).
- 2 Reindex the Vibe site, as described in [“Rebuilding the Lucene Index” in “Site Maintenance” in the *Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide*](#).

Your Vibe site should now function just as it did on the original source server.

23.3 Windows Migration with an MS SQL Database

- ♦ [Section 23.3.1, “Preparing the Target Windows Server,” on page 196](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.3.2, “Preparing the Source Windows Server,” on page 196](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.3.3, “Transferring Data from the Source Server to the Target Server,” on page 197](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.3.4, “Importing the Database to the Target Server,” on page 197](#)
- ♦ [Section 23.3.5, “Finalizing Your New Vibe 4 Site,” on page 198](#)

23.3.1 Preparing the Target Windows Server

On the target server:

- 1 Install the Vibe 4 software, as described in [Part II, “Basic Installation,” on page 37](#).

IMPORTANT: Select the same encryption algorithm for the Vibe 4 database that you selected for the source Vibe server. If the database encryption algorithms do not match between the source and target systems, you cannot log in to the new Vibe 4 site.

- 2 Start Vibe on the target server.
- 3 Verify that the new Vibe site is working as expected.
- 4 Stop Vibe on the target server.
- 5 Rename the `teaming` directory to `teaming_backup`. In a future step you will copy the `teaming` directory from the source server to the target server.

The location of the `teaming` directory varies by platform:

Linux: `/var/opt/novell/teaming`

Windows: `c:\Program Files\Novell\Teaming`

- 6 Continue with [Section 23.3.2, “Preparing the Source Windows Server,” on page 196](#).

23.3.2 Preparing the Source Windows Server

On the source server:

- 1 Stop Vibe.

- 2 Back up your existing database:
 - 2a In Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio, browse to and right-click the existing database (named `sitescape`), then click *Tasks > Back Up*.
 - 2b For *Backup type*, select *Full*.
 - 2c Set other backup options as desired, then click *OK*.
This creates a file named `sitescape.bak` in the following directory:


```
c:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL\Backup
```
- 3 Ensure that you have a recent backup of your entire system.
- 4 Continue with [Section 23.3.3, "Transferring Data from the Source Server to the Target Server," on page 197](#).

23.3.3 Transferring Data from the Source Server to the Target Server

On the source server:

- 1 Map a drive from the target server to the source server so that data can be copied from one server to the other.
- 2 Copy your existing software extensions to the target server:

From: `c:\home\icecoredata\extensions`

To: `c:\novell\teaming\extensions`

Beginning with Vibe 3, the `extensions` directory now contains `kablink` and `liferay.com` directories.

- 3 Delete the empty `kablink` directory.
- 4 Delete or rename the following directories to make room for the corresponding directories that you are copying from the source server:

```
c:\novell\teaming
c:\novell\teaming\lucene
c:\novell\teaming\extensions
```

- 5 Copy the entire data area from `c:\novell\teaming` on the source server to the same location on the target server.
- 6 (Conditional) If you are using secure LDAP (LDAPS), you need to copy the `cacerts` file to the same location on the target server.
- 7 Continue with [Section 23.3.4, "Importing the Database to the Target Server," on page 197](#).

23.3.4 Importing the Database to the Target Server

On the target server:

- 1 In Microsoft SQL Server Management Studio, browse to and right-click the existing Vibe database (named `sitescape`) that was created when you installed the Vibe 4 software, then click *Delete*.
- 2 To import the data from your source database, browse to and right-click *Databases*, then click *Tasks > Restore*.

- 3 In the *To database* field, specify `sitescape`.
- 4 In the *From device* field, browse to and select the `sitescape.bak` file that you transferred to the target server.
- 5 Set other restore options as desired, then click *OK*.

This creates the `sitescape` database in the following directory on the target server:

```
c:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL
```

Backed-up data from the source database is imported into the database for your new Vibe 4 system.

23.3.5 Finalizing Your New Vibe 4 Site

- 1 Start Vibe 4, as described in [“Starting Vibe on Linux” on page 67](#).
- 2 Reindex the Vibe site, as described in [“Rebuilding the Lucene Index”](#) in [“Site Maintenance”](#) in the [Novell Vibe 4.0 Administration Guide](#).

Your Vibe site should now function just as it did on the original source server.

24 Migrating from SiteScape Forum or Other Collaboration Software

Moving legacy corporate data into a new collaboration system can look like a long, challenging process. To make the job easier, see the *Novell Teaming Migration Services Flyer*. (http://www.novell.com/docrep/2009/04/Novell_Teaming_Migration_Flyer_en.pdf)

VII

Appendixes

- ♦ [Appendix A, “Vibe System Requirements Assistance,” on page 203](#)
- ♦ [Appendix B, “Memcached Caching with Novell Vibe,” on page 209](#)
- ♦ [Appendix C, “Third-Party Materials,” on page 213](#)
- ♦ [Appendix D, “Documentation Updates,” on page 219](#)

A Vibe System Requirements Assistance

The system requirements for Novell Vibe include supporting components that might or might not already be installed on your Vibe server. This section helps you meet the Vibe system requirements if you are not familiar with how to install these supporting components.

- ♦ [Section A.1, “Java Development Kit \(JDK\),” on page 203](#)
- ♦ [Section A.2, “Java Cryptography Extension \(JCE\),” on page 205](#)
- ♦ [Section A.3, “MySQL Database Server,” on page 206](#)

A.1 Java Development Kit (JDK)

The Novell Vibe software runs inside a Java Virtual Machine (JVM). At present, Vibe requires a Java Development Kit (JDK), not a Java Runtime Environment (JRE), in order to run properly. You can use either the Oracle JDK or the IBM JDK. Follow the instructions in the section below for your operating system and JDK preference:

If you want to use an SSL connection between your Novell Vibe site and a WebDAV server, and if the WebDAV server has a self-signed certificate rather than a certificate provided by a certificate authority, you must use the Oracle JDK. The existing Vibe functionality for handling self-signed certificates is not compatible with the way the IBM JDK handles self-signed certificates.

- ♦ [Section A.1.1, “Oracle JDK on Linux,” on page 203](#)
- ♦ [Section A.1.2, “IBM JDK on Linux,” on page 204](#)
- ♦ [Section A.1.3, “Oracle JDK on Windows,” on page 204](#)

A.1.1 Oracle JDK on Linux

This section describes how to install the Java Development Kit (JDK) for 64-bit Linux, using the following archive binary file: `jdk-version-linux-x64.tar.gz`.

- 1 Go to the following URL:
[Java SE Downloads \(http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html\)](http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html)
- 2 Download the `jdk-version-linux-x64.tar.gz` file to the `/usr/java` directory on your Linux server.
- 3 Accept the License Agreement.
- 4 As the `root` user, change to the `/usr/java` directory where you downloaded the file, then use the following command to ensure that the download arrived safely:

```
ls -l
```

You should see a file named `jdk-version-linux-x64.tar.gz`.

- 5 Extract the file:

```
tar -xvf jdk-version-linux-x64.tar.gz
```

The Oracle JDK is now installed on your Linux server.

- 6 (Conditional) You might need to remove a symbolic link and create a new one:

```
rm /usr/java/latest  
ln -s /usr/java/jdkversion /usr/java/latest
```

- 7 Run the following two commands:

```
chmod -R 755 /usr/java/jdkversion  
chown -R root:root /usr/java/jdkversion
```

- 8 Install the JCE, as described in [Section A.2, “Java Cryptography Extension \(JCE\),” on page 205](#).

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Java JDK Location* on the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#), specify the directory where you plan to install the JDK. The Vibe installation program prompts you for this location.

A.1.2 IBM JDK on Linux

The IBM JDK is available with SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES). You can install it by using YaST.

- 1 Enable the SDK online repositories.

For information about how to enable the SDK repositories on SLES, see [TID 7015337 \(https://www.novell.com/support/kb/doc.php?id=7015337\)](https://www.novell.com/support/kb/doc.php?id=7015337) in the [Novell Support Knowledgebase \(https://www.novell.com/support/kb/\)](https://www.novell.com/support/kb/).

- 2 In YaST, click *Software > Software Management*.
- 3 In the *Search* field, type `java`, then click *Search*.
- 4 Select *Java version SDK, Standard Edition (java-version-ibm-devel)*, then click *Accept*.
- 5 Click *Continue* to accept the suggested dependencies, then click *No* (because you don't need any more packages).
- 6 Exit YaST.

This creates a directory named `/usr/lib/jvm/java-version-ibm-version_sr3` with the IBM JDK software in it.

- 7 Install the JCE, as described in [Section A.2, “Java Cryptography Extension \(JCE\),” on page 205](#).

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Java JDK Location* on the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#), specify the directory where you plan to install the JDK. The Vibe installation program prompts you for this location.

A.1.3 Oracle JDK on Windows

- 1 Go to the following URL:

[Java SE Downloads \(http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html\)](http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html)

- 2 Download the latest Java SE version that is appropriate for your operating system.
- 3 Accept the license agreement.
- 4 Click the `jdk-version-windows-version.exe` file in the *Download* column, then save the file to an empty temporary directory on your Windows server.

- 5 Change to that temporary directory, then run the downloaded executable.
This creates a directory named `c:\Program Files\Java\jdkversion` with the Oracle JDK software in it.
The Oracle JDK is now installed on your Windows server.
- 6 Install the JCE, as described in [Section A.2, “Java Cryptography Extension \(JCE\),” on page 205](#).

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Java JDK Location* on the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#), specify the directory where you plan to install the JDK. The Vibe installation program prompts you for this location.

A.2 Java Cryptography Extension (JCE)

You must install the Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) in addition to the JDK.

A.2.1 Oracle JCE on Linux and Windows

- 1 On your management workstation, download the [Java Cryptography Extension \(JCE\) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy files](http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/jce8-download-2133166.html) (<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/jce8-download-2133166.html>) from Oracle.
- 2 Follow the instructions from the Readme that is downloaded with the Oracle JCE.

A.2.2 IBM JCE on Linux

To install the JCE on Linux:

- 1 On the Vibe server, verify that the following files exist:

```
/etc/alternatives/jce_version_ibm_local_policy
/etc/alternatives/jce_version_ibm_us_export_policy
```
- 2 On your management workstation, download the [Java Cryptography Extension \(JCE\) Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy files](https://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/iwm/web/reg/pick.do?source=jcesdk&lang=en_US) (https://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/iwm/web/reg/pick.do?source=jcesdk&lang=en_US) from IBM.
- 3 Log in to the Vibe server as the root user (or equivalent), then create the following directory:

```
mkdir -p /usr/lib64/jvm-private/java-version-ibm/jce/unrestricted
```
- 4 Copy the JCE Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy ZIP file to the folder on the Vibe server that you created in [Step 3](#).

```
cp ~/Downloads/unrestrictedpolicyfiles.zip /usr/lib64/jvm-private/java-version-ibm/jce/unrestricted
```
- 5 Unzip the files:

```
unzip /usr/lib64/jvm-private/java-version-ibm/jce/unrestricted/unrestrictedpolicyfiles.zip
```
- 6 Stop Vibe.

```
/etc/init.d/teaming stop
```
- 7 Remove the existing links:

```
rm /etc/alternatives/jce_version_ibm_local_policy
rm /etc/alternatives/jce_version_ibm_us_export_policy
```

- 8 Create a new link to the JCE that you downloaded:

```
ln -s /usr/lib64/jvm-private/java-version-ibm/jce/unrestricted/  
local_policy.jar /etc/alternatives/jce_version_ibm_local_policy  
  
ln -s /usr/lib64/jvm-private/java-version-ibm/jce/unrestricted/  
US_export_policy.jar /etc/alternatives/jce_version_ibm_us_export_policy
```

- 9 Verify that the links were created:

```
ls -l /etc/alternatives/jce*
```

- 10 Start Vibe.

```
/etc/init.d/teaming start  
  
tailf /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/logs/catalina.out  
tailf /opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/logs/appserver.log
```

A.3 MySQL Database Server

- ♦ [Section A.3.1, “MySQL on Linux,” on page 206](#)
- ♦ [Section A.3.2, “MySQL on Windows,” on page 208](#)

A.3.1 MySQL on Linux

IMPORTANT: The steps in this section are optimized for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) 11. For information regarding other version of SLES or other flavors of Linux, see [Installing and Upgrading MySQL \(http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.1/en/installing.html\)](http://dev.mysql.com/doc/refman/5.1/en/installing.html) in the [MySQL documentation \(http://dev.mysql.com/doc/\)](http://dev.mysql.com/doc/).

Depending on the options you select when installing Open Enterprise Server 2 and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES), the MySQL database server might be installed along with the operating system. Check for the following directory:

```
/usr/bin/mysql
```

If the `/usr/bin/mysql` directory does not exist, you need to install the MySQL database server. If MySQL is already installed, you still need to configure it for use with Vibe.

- ♦ [“Installing MySQL” on page 206](#)
- ♦ [“Configuring MySQL” on page 207](#)
- ♦ [“Learning More about MySQL” on page 207](#)

Installing MySQL

- 1 Ensure you have access to your operating system installation media.
- 2 In YaST, click *Software > Software Management*.
- 3 In the *Search* field, type `mysql`, then click *Search*.
- 4 Select *mysql*, then click *Accept*.
- 5 Click *Continue* to resolve dependencies.
- 6 Click *Continue* to acknowledge package support status.

MySQL is then installed from the SLES media.

- 7 Continue with [“Configuring MySQL” on page 207](#).

Configuring MySQL

When MySQL is initially installed, it is not configured with an administrator password, nor is it configured to start automatically. Follow the steps below to set up the MySQL database server for use with Vibe:

- 1 In YaST, click *System > System Services*.
- 2 Scroll to and select the MySQL service, then click *Enable*.
- 3 Click *Continue* to install dependencies, then click *OK* to close the status box.
- 4 Click *OK > Yes* to finish the installation, then exit YaST.
- 5 In a terminal window, become the `root` user.
- 6 To verify that the MySQL database server has started, use the following command:

```
ps -eaf | grep mysql
```

You should see MySQL processes running.

- 7 Set the administrator password for the MySQL database server:

```
mysqladmin -u root password new_password
```

This command changes the password for the MySQL `root` user, which is the default administrator user name for the MySQL database server. This command is part of the MySQL client package.

IMPORTANT: The MySQL `root` user name is not the same as the Linux `root` user. The Linux `root` user has a password established for it when you install Linux. In a parallel fashion, the MySQL `root` user needs to have a password established for it when you install MySQL.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Database Credentials* on the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#), specify the MySQL administrator password. The Vibe installation program prompts you for this information.

Learning More about MySQL

The following table includes some basic and useful MySQL commands:

Action	Command
Stop MySQL	<code>/etc/initd/mysql stop</code>
Start MySQL	<code>/etc/initd/mysql start</code>
Show MySQL status	<code>mysqladmin -u root -p extended-status</code>

If you want to administer MySQL through a GUI interface, you can download tools from:

[MySQL GUI Tools Downloads \(http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/gui-tools/5.0.html\)](http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/gui-tools/5.0.html)

For more information about MySQL, see:

A.3.2 MySQL on Windows

- 1 In your web browser, go to the following URL:
[MySQL 5.1 Downloads \(http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/mysql/5.1.html\)](http://dev.mysql.com/downloads/mysql/5.1.html)
- 2 Scroll down if necessary, then click the type of Windows operating system you are using (32-bit or 64-bit).
- 3 On the *Windows Essentials* line, click *Download*.
- 4 Click *Save File*, browse to and select a convenient temporary directory, then click *Save*.
- 5 In Windows Explorer, browse to the directory where you saved the MySQL .exe file.
- 6 Double-click the MySQL .exe file to start the MySQL Setup Wizard.
- 7 Follow the online instructions to install the MySQL software on the Windows server, then continue with [Step 8](#) to configure the server.
- 8 Unless you are already familiar with configuring MySQL on a Windows server, select *Standard Configuration*, then click *Next*.
- 9 Select *Include Bin Directory in Windows PATH*, then click *Next*.
- 10 Set the MySQL `root` user password, then click *Next*.

BASIC VIBE INSTALLATION SUMMARY SHEET

Under *Database Credentials* on the [Basic Vibe Installation Summary Sheet](#), specify the MySQL administrator password. The Vibe installation program prompts you for this information.

- 11 Click *Execute* to configure the MySQL database server, then click *Finish*.
Some messages report the status of your MySQL installation.
- 12 To monitor the MySQL database server, click *Start > All Programs*, then click *MySQL > MySQL Server 5.1 > MySQL Command Line Client*.

B Memcached Caching with Novell Vibe

Novell Vibe contains two caching options for the hibernate caching provider: ehcache and memcached. For more information about ehcache, see [Ehcache \(http://ehcache.sourceforge.net\)](http://ehcache.sourceforge.net).

- ♦ [Section B.1, “About Memcached,” on page 209](#)
- ♦ [Section B.2, “Downloading and Installing Memcached,” on page 209](#)
- ♦ [Section B.3, “Configuring Memcached,” on page 210](#)
- ♦ [Section B.4, “Configuring Memcached in the Vibe Installation Program,” on page 211](#)
- ♦ [Section B.5, “Memcached Logging,” on page 211](#)

B.1 About Memcached

Memcached is a high-performance, distributed memory object caching system used by a number of large Internet sites such as Wikipedia, Flickr, Twitter, and Youtube, as well as enterprise systems.

- ♦ [Section B.1.1, “Advantages for Using Memcached,” on page 209](#)
- ♦ [Section B.1.2, “Hardware Requirements and Configurations,” on page 209](#)

B.1.1 Advantages for Using Memcached

Memcached offers the following advantages over other caching systems:

- ♦ Better utilization of memory resources from the server farm.
- ♦ No replication (and therefore no overhead involved in replication). This results in a reduction of 60 or more threads per Vibe node in a two-node cluster.
- ♦ The number of servers and the size of data scale together.
- ♦ Scales out much better than replication-based cluster cache.

B.1.2 Hardware Requirements and Configurations

Novell Vibe supports memcached only on the SUSE Linux operating system. For detailed hardware requirements and layouts, see [Memcached Hardware Requirements and Layouts \(http://code.google.com/p/memcached/wiki/NewHardware\)](http://code.google.com/p/memcached/wiki/NewHardware).

B.2 Downloading and Installing Memcached

NOTE: You should run memcached only on a SUSE Linux operating system. 64-bit is recommended.

Memcached is included with the SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension. You simply need to install it on the server where the Lucene search index is running as you would any other Linux package.

If you do not have the SUSE Linux Enterprise High Availability Extension, you can download and install memcached by completing the following steps on the Lucene search index server:

- 1 Navigate to the [openSUSE Software Download page \(http://software.opensuse.org\)](http://software.opensuse.org).
- 2 In the *Search* field, type `memcached`, then click *Search*.
- 3 Download the RPM file after it is returned in the search results.
- 4 Install the downloaded RPM file.
- 5 Repeat [Step 1](#) through [Step 4](#) on the Lucene search index server.
- 6 Continue with [Section B.3, “Configuring Memcached,” on page 210](#).

B.3 Configuring Memcached

After you have downloaded and installed memcached on the server where the Lucene search index is running, as described in [Section B.2, “Downloading and Installing Memcached,” on page 209](#), you need to configure it on each node.

You configure memcached by adding the desired switches to the `MEMCACHED_PARAMS` variable.

- 1 Navigate to the `etc/sysconfig` directory.
- 2 Open the `memcached` file in a text editor.
- 3 Uncomment the `MEMCACHED_PARAMS` variable and add any switches that you feel are appropriate. When you uncomment the `MEMCACHED_PARAMS` variable, the following switches are already present:
 - ♦ `-d`: Runs as a daemon. This is recommended.
 - ♦ `-l`: Determines the interface to listen on. The default value is the localhost. You should either delete this switch with its default address (this is recommended for a simple setup) or change the default address to the address that you want memcached to listen on. For example, `-l 172.17.2.3`.

To see a complete list of switches that are available with memcached, type `memcached -h` from the command line of a machine where memcached is installed.

- 4 (Recommended) Increase the maximum memory to use for items to 1024 MB. You do this by adding the `-m` switch to the `MEMCACHED_PARAMS` variable. For example:

```
-m 1024
```

- 5 (Recommended) You should configure memcached to start automatically each time you reboot the server where the Lucene search index is running. To configure memcached to start automatically, enter the following command from the command line:

```
chkconfig --add memcached
```

To verify that automatic startup is enabled, enter the following command from the command line:

```
chkconfig memcached
```

- 6 Validate that memcached is running from the local server by typing the following command:

```
netstat -ap|grep memcached
```

- 7 After you have verified that memcached is running on the local server, log in to a remote server, then validate that memcached is running to ensure that no networking problems exist:

- 7a** From the command line of a remote server, make a network connection to the server where memcached is running. For example, you can use the `telnet` command.

```
telnet 172.17.2.3 11211
```

7b Type a simple memcached command, such as `stats` and `stats settings`.

7c After you have verified that memcached is running as expected, type `quit` to exit telnet.

Following is an example of what you see:

```
07309:~/Desktop # telnet xxx.xxx.xxx.xx 11211
Trying xxx.xxx.xxx.xx...
Connected to xxx.xxx.xxx.xx.
Escape character is '^]'.
stats
STAT pid 2486
STAT uptime 313
STAT time 1334337169
STAT version 1.2.6
STAT pointer_size 64
STAT rusage_user 0.028001
STAT rusage_system 0.000000
STAT curr_items 10
STAT total_items 17
STAT bytes 7971
STAT curr_connections 4
STAT total_connections 6
STAT connection_structures 5
STAT cmd_get 79
STAT cmd_set 17
STAT get_hits 62
STAT get_misses 17
STAT evictions 0
STAT bytes_read 14249
STAT bytes_written 67674
STAT limit_maxbytes 67108864
STAT threads 1
END
quit
Connection closed by foreign host.
07309:~/Desktop #
```

- 8 Continue with [Section B.4, “Configuring Memcached in the Vibe Installation Program,”](#) on [page 211](#).

B.4 Configuring Memcached in the Vibe Installation Program

After you have installed and configured memcached, you need to configure the Vibe installation program to use memcached as the hibernate caching provider. For more information, see [Section 5.1.2, “Running the Linux Vibe Installation Program,”](#) on [page 60](#).

B.5 Memcached Logging

To trace activities on the Vibe server that are related to memcached:

- 1 Navigate to the following directory: `/opt/novell/teaming/apache-tomcat/webapps/ssf/WEB-INF`
- 2 Open the `log4j.properties` file in a text editor.
- 3 Uncomment the following lines in the `log4j.properties` file:

```
# Tracing of memcached
#log4j.category.net.spy.memcached=DEBUG
#log4j.category.net.rubyeye.xmemcached=DEBUG
#log4j.category.com.googlecode.hibernate.memcached=DEBUG
#log4j.category.com.novell.teaming.memcached=DEBUG
#log4j.category.com.novell.teaming.hibernate.memcached=DEBUG
```

- 4** Save and close the `log4j.properties` file.
- 5** Restart the Vibe server.

C Third-Party Materials

- ♦ [Section C.1, “ANTLR 3 License,” on page 213](#)
- ♦ [Section C.2, “Colt License Agreement,” on page 214](#)
- ♦ [Section C.3, “Dom4j License,” on page 214](#)
- ♦ [Section C.4, “iCal4j License,” on page 215](#)
- ♦ [Section C.5, “ICU4J license \(ICU4J 1.3.1 and later\),” on page 215](#)
- ♦ [Section C.6, “JAXEN License,” on page 216](#)
- ♦ [Section C.7, “Jung,” on page 216](#)
- ♦ [Section C.8, “ASM,” on page 217](#)
- ♦ [Section C.9, “Firebug Lite,” on page 218](#)

C.1 ANTLR 3 License

Copyright (c) 2003-2008, Terence Parr

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met

- ♦ Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- ♦ Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- ♦ Neither the name of the author nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS “AS IS” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

C.2 Colt License Agreement

Packages cern.colc*, cern.jet*, cern.clhep

Copyright (c) 1999 CERN - European Organization for Nuclear Research.

Permission to use, copy, modify, distribute and sell this software and its documentation for any purpose is hereby granted without fee, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation. CERN makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without expressed or implied warranty.

Packages hep.aida.*

Written by Pavel Binko, Dino Ferrero Merlino, Wolfgang Hoschek, Tony Johnson, Andreas Pfeiffer, and others. Check the FreeHEP home page for more info. Permission to use and/or redistribute this work is granted under the terms of the LGPL License, with the exception that any usage related to military applications is expressly forbidden. The software and documentation made available under the terms of this license are provided with no warranty.

C.3 Dom4j License

Copyright 2001-2005 (C) MetaStuff, Ltd. All Rights Reserved.

Redistribution and use of this software and associated documentation ("Software"), with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain copyright statements and notices. Redistributions must also contain a copy of this document.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The name "DOM4J" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this Software without prior written permission of MetaStuff, Ltd. For written permission, please contact dom4j-info@metastuff.com.
4. The name "DOM4J" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this Software without prior written permission of MetaStuff, Ltd. For written permission, please contact dom4j-info@metastuff.com.
5. Products derived from this Software may not be called "DOM4J" nor may "DOM4J" appear in their names without prior written permission of MetaStuff, Ltd. DOM4J is a registered trademark of MetaStuff, Ltd.
6. Due credit should be given to the DOM4J Project (<http://www.dom4j.org>).

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY METASTUFF, LTD. AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL METASTUFF, LTD. OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright 2001-2005 (C) MetaStuff, Ltd. All Rights Reserved.

C.4 iCal4j License

Copyright (c) 2008, Ben Fortuna

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- ♦ Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- ♦ Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- ♦ Neither the name of Ben Fortuna nor the names of any other contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

C.5 ICU4J license (ICU4J 1.3.1 and later)

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright (c) 1995-2001 International Business Machines Corporation and others

All rights reserved.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, provided that the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in all copies of the Software and that both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

C.6 JAXEN License

Copyright (C) 2000-2002 Bob McWhirter & James Strachan.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions, and the disclaimer that follows these conditions in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The name "Jaxen" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact license@jaxen.org.
4. Products derived from this software may not be called "Jaxen," nor may "Jaxen" appear in their name, without prior written permission from the Jaxen Project Management (pm@jaxen.org).

In addition, we request (but do not require) that you include in the end-user documentation provided with the redistribution and/or in the software itself an acknowledgement equivalent to the following:

"This product includes software developed by the Jaxen Project (<http://www.jaxen.org>)."

Alternatively, the acknowledgment may be graphical using the logos available at <http://www.jaxen.org>.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE Jaxen AUTHORS OR THE PROJECT CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software consists of voluntary contributions made by many individuals on behalf of the Jaxen Project and was originally created by bob mcwhirter (bob@werken.com) and James Strachan (jstrachan@apache.org). For more information on the Jaxen Project, please see <http://www.jaxen.org>.

C.7 Jung

THE JUNG LICENSE

Copyright (c) 2003-2004, Regents of the University of California and the JUNG Project

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- ♦ Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- ♦ Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- ♦ Neither the name of the University of California nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

C.8 ASM

Copyright (c) 2000-2005, INRIA, France Telecom

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- ♦ Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- ♦ Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- ♦ Neither the name of the copyright holders nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

C.9 Firebug Lite

Copyright (c) 2006-2007, Joe Hewitt

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- ♦ Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- ♦ Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- ♦ Neither the name of the copyright holders nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

D Documentation Updates

Changes made to this guide since the initial release of Vibe 4.0 are listed below.

Section Changed	Summary of Changes
no changes	

